HAND THE THE PARTY OF THE PARTY HANDERS TO SEE THE PROPERTY OF

		目录	7 - 7
			LXX+
	专题一	名词1	13/X C
	专题二	代词6	11/12/10
	专题三	冠词14	
	专题四	数词	.7///
	专题五	介词	
	专题六	形容词和副词29	
	专题七	被动语态35	
	专题八	简单句的种类38	
~	专题九	情景交际44	
X	专题十	动词简述	
(20%)	专题十一	主谓一致	
	专题十二	X () . ()	
	专题十三	AIT VI	
	专题十五	1000	
	专题十六		
	专题十七	\(\lambda \times	
	专题十八		0.7
	专题十九	"it"的用法和"there be"句型1	200
/ ₂			
位义	5		
M	9		
00	,		
(0)			
		-7/2	

专题一 名词

学前自测

()1. Not much of the is surp	rising in Guangzhou Daily today.
	A. ideas B. news	C. opinions D. articles
()2. —Would you like something	g to drink? —, please.
	A. Two bottle of orange	B. Two bottle of oranges
	C. Two bottles of orange	D. Two bottles of oranges
()3.—I had for breakfast this	morning. What about you, Lily? —Just a piece of bread
	A. some noodles	B. a few noodle
	C. a little noodle	D. a noodle
(-)4. When we are in trouble, we n	eed to get from others.
	A. many money	B. some advice
3	C. many help	D. some chances
()5. Green represents and na	ture. When you feel weak, you can wear green.
	A. sadness B. purity	C. joy D. energy
()6. Mickey is one of the most fam	ousin American
	A. symbol; culture	B. symbol; cultures
	C. symbols; culture	D. symbols; cultures
()7. Spring is Tom's favourite	. He likes warm weather.
	A. holiday B. season	C. fruit D. drink
()8. In autumn there are a lot of	on the ground.
	A. leaf B. leafs	C. leaves D. leave
()9. Look! You can see many	_ in the pool. And here is some for you to keep them.
	A. fish; suggestion	B. fishes; advices
	C. fish; advice	D. fishes; suggestion
)10 Day is coming. I will b	ouy somefor Miss Wu.
1	A. Teacher's; flower	B. Teachers'; flowers
	C. Teachers'; flower	D. Teacher's; flowers

常考考点知识清单

考点一 可数名词的复数形式

1. 规则变化

情况	构成方法	例词
一般情况	加-s	pen—pens; doctor—doctors; map—maps
以 s, x, ch, sh 结尾	加-es	bus—buses; box—boxes; watch—watches; brush—brushes
以辅音字母 加 y 结尾	将 y 变为 I 再加-es	factory—factories; family—families
情况	构成方法	例词
以元音字母 加 y 结尾	只加-s	boy—boys; day—days
以 o 结尾	有生命的加-es	Negro—Negroes; hero—heroes; potato—potatoes; tomato—tomatoes 巧记:黑人英雄喜欢吃土豆和西红柿。 (两人两菜)
	无生命的加-s	photo—photos; radio—radios; piano—pianos
情况	构成方法	例词
以 f 或 fe 结尾	将 f 或 fe 变 为 v 再加-es	wife—wives; thief—thieves; shelf—shelves; knife—knives; wolf—wolves; half—halves; leaf—leaves; life—lives 巧记:妻见小偷架下藏,手拿小刀想杀狼,谁知落下半片叶,砸在头上一命亡。
TO K	加-s	roof—roofs

2. 不规则变化

(1) man—men; woman—women; child—children;

foot—feet; tooth—teeth; goose—geese; mouse—mice

(2) 单复数相同:sheep—sheep; deer—deer; fish—fish

注意:fish 强调鱼的条数的时候,单复数同形;强调鱼的种类的时候,复数形式要加-es,即 fishes。

(3) 某国人变复数的歌诀:中日不变英法变,其余-s 加后面。

Chinese—Chinese; Japanese—Japanese;

Englishman—Englishmen; American—Americans

(4) 有些名词本身是复数形式,如:clothes; pants; trousers; jeans; shorts; glasses; people 等。 注意:people 当"人们"讲时,本身是复数形式;当"民族"讲时,是单数形式,其复数要在末尾加-s。a people; 56 peoples

3. 复合名词的数

- (1) 一般情况下把后面一个名词变为复数,作定语的名词不变。 a girl student—five girl students; an apple tree—ten apple trees
- (2) 由 man 和 woman 构成的复合名词,变复数时要把名词和 man/ woman 同时变为复数。 a man doctor—three men doctors; a woman teacher—six women teachers
- (3) sport 作定语修饰其他名词时,无论主题词是单数还是复数,sport 通常用复数形式。 a sports club; sports shoes

注意:时间名词作定语有两种形式:

两天的假期 a two-day holiday 或 two days' holiday

十分钟的路程 a ten-minute ride 或 ten minutes' ride

考点二 不可数名词

1. 不可数名词没有复数形式,前面不能用不定冠词 a/ an 修饰,但可用 much, a lot of / lots of, plenty of, some, lit-tle, a little 等修饰。 作主语时谓语动词用单数形式。

There is some tea in the cup. 茶杯里有些茶。

2. 不可数名词还常用"数词/不定冠词+量词+of+不可数名词"来表示不可数名词的量。 a piece of paper 一张纸, two cups of tea 两杯茶, a glass of water 一玻璃杯水, three bottles of pop 三瓶汽水。 作主语时,谓语动词的数取决于 of 前面的量词的数。

There are three glasses of orange juice on the table. 桌子上有三杯橙汁。

考点三 名词所有格

1.'s 所有格

情况	方法	例子
单数名词	加 's	my friend's uncle 我朋友的叔叔
以 s 结尾的复数名词	加 ,	Teachers' Day 教师节

不以 s 结尾的复数名	加 's	Children's Day 儿童节
词	\$	
表示两人共有	在最后一个名词后	Lucy and Lily's mother 露西和莉莉的妈妈
	加 's	-1/2
表示各自所有	在各个名词后加 's	Lucy's and Lily's rooms 露西的房间和莉莉的房间

2. of 所有格

主要用于表示无生命事物的所有关系。

the name of the film 电影的名字 the cover of the book 书的封面

- 3. 双重所有格
- "名词+of+名词性物主代词/名词所有格"构成双重所有格形式。

a friend of hers 她的一个朋友 a friend of Mike's 迈克的一个朋友

考点四 专有名词

专有名词是指人、地方、团体、机构等特有的名称。 它的第一个字母必须大写。专有名词前一般不加冠词。

1. 表示人名、尊称和头衔的专有名词

Einstein 爱因斯坦

President Obama 奥巴马总统

Doctor Lin 林博士/ 林医生

Queen Elizabeth II 伊利莎白女王二世

Mr Brown 布朗先生

注意:人名的前面若有尊称或头衔,如 Mr (先生), President (总统)等时,其第一个字母也要大写

2. 表示国名、地名、山河名的专有名词

Korea 韩国

Paris 巴黎

Pacific Ocean 太平洋

Mississippi 密西西比河

Mt. Qomolangma 珠穆朗玛峰

3. 表示团体、机构和报刊的专有名词

Museum of Postal History 邮政博物馆

China Daily 中国日报

Sydney Opera House 悉尼歌剧院

Harvard University 哈佛大学

4. 表示星期、月份和节日的专有名词

Monday 星期一

March 三月

National Day 国庆节

5. 由普通名词构成的专有名词

the North Pole 北极

the River Nile 尼罗河

the Forbidden City 紫禁城

the Bund 上海外滩

the Great Wall 长城

the Temple of Heaven 天坛

the White House 白宫

the Terracotta Warriors 兵马俑

the People's Republic of China 中华人民共和国

注意:上面列举的由普通名词构成的专有名词前要用定冠词"the",但它的首字母不大写

巩固训练 (夯实基础)

	单			, 173
)1. —May I help yo	u? —Yes, I'd like to	have 20 I need	them to draw pictures. (2015)
1	A. piece of paper		B. pieces of paper	
	C. pieces of paper	S	D. piece of papers	
()2.—How does the o	old man make a	on the farm? —He ra	ises many
	A. life; duck		B. living; horse	
	C. life; bird		D. living; sheep	
()3. —Can I help you	ı? —I'd like fo	r twin daughters.	
	A. two pair of sho	es	B. two pairs of sho	oe ·
	C. two pair of shoo		D. two pairs of sho	oes
()4. —Kate, what's in	n the big bowl? —A	few and a littl	e
	A. pear; water		B. pears; waters	XX+C
	C. pear; waters		D. pears; water	-7/1/0
)5. —The two cities ha	ave reached an	to develop science ar	nd technology. (2014)
	—That's great!			
	A. education	B. excitement	C. agreement	D. invitation
)6. —Look, my shir	t is the same as your	—So it is.	2///
	A. brother	B. sisters	C. brothers	D. brother's
0)7. Recently people of	are more about the s	afety of Every	one wants to eat healthily.
	A. foods	B. clothes	C. buildings	D. water
()8. In our school, the n	number of women tea	achers becoming	g larger and larger.
	A. is	B. are	C. be	D. been
()9. —There are twe	nty in our scho	ol. —Yes, and they w	vork very hard.

	A. man teacher	B. man teachers	C. men teachers	D. men teacher
()10. —I saw lots of _	in the hall. —	And there were several _	in it, too. (2016)
	A. American; Japan	nese	B. Americans; Japanes	e
	C. American; Japan	neses	D. Americans; Japanes	es
		1-11	•	
二、	用所给单词的正确形	式填空		
1.W	e played a joke on Jim	on April(Fo	ool) Day.	//
2. Tl	nere are many	(Frenchman) vi	siting this place.	
3. M	r Green is a businessma	an and he runs four	(factory).	
4. It	is a (please) f	or me to stay with y	ou.	
5. O	ur school will have a _	(sport) meetir	ng next weekend.	P.J.J.
6. It	's (Lucy) bool	x. Please give it to h	er.	I WIT
7. I t	ook a lot of (pl	noto) in Hong Kong	Disneyland.	1-1
8. Tl	nanks for giving me so	much(information).	K-/
9. It	s five(minut	e) walk from here to	my home.	
10. V	What's the (long	g) of this river?		0)
7			XX	
		,		
		-1/2	KIND .	
		专题二	代词	
			NO	
学前	自測			-
(of them lives with hir	
		B. both	C. neither	D. all
()2. —I prefer speaking		•	×7/>
	—Oh, really! I	think you should be	good at of them.	75 7
	A. some	B. any	C. both	D. all
()3. She promised th	at she could finish t	he work by	-//X - (N)
	A. her	B. herself	C. she	D. hers
)4. I saw the dog alon	g with a girl wa	s the only guide dog in or	ır city.
11.	A. who	B. which	C. whom	. what
()5. —Could you lend	d me your pen? I lef	t at home. —Certai	nly.
C/	A. mine	B. yours	C. one	. it
1)6. —Wow, the Engl	lish exam is so easy.		
	—I think so.	But I don't think	can pass it.	
	A. someone	B. anyone	C. everyone	D. no one
()7. The people in Tok	yo will have to get	ready before the 2020	Tokyo Olympic Games.

	A. anything	B. nothing	C. som	ething	D. everything
()8. — Wow! There a	are so many new build	lings. I can't believ	e it! It used to be	a poor village
	— Yes	has changed here.	Link,	Y	
	A. Something	B. Nothing	C. Everything	D. Anyth	ing
()9 David	Jessica can go to the	concert, because the	y have no tickets	
	A. Neither; nor	B. Either; or	C. Both; and	D. Not on	nly; but also
()10. The boy said the	at he couldn't work or	it the problem by _		
	A. him	B. his	C. he	D. himself	

常考考点知识清单

考点一 人称代词

1. 人称代词的分类

人称	主格		宾格	
11/1	单数	复数	单数	复数
第一人称	I	we	me	us
第二人称	you	you	you	you
第三人称	he	they	him	them
	she		her	
	it	. ×	it	///

2. 人称代词的用法

人称代词的主格在句中作主语,宾格作动词或介词的宾语。

We are middle school students. 我们是中学生。

I wrote a letter to him last week. 上周我给他写了一封信。

注意:人称代词作表语时,在口语中常用宾格。

3. 人称代词的语序

几个人称代词并列作主语时,其顺序是:单数:二、三、一;复数:一、二、三。

You, she and I will study in a group. 你、她还有我将在一个组里学习。

We, you and they are all students. 我们、你们还有他们都是学生

考点二 物主代词

1. 物主代词的分类

人称	形容词性物主代词		名词性物主代词	
	单数	复数	单数	复数
第一人称	my	our	mine	ours
第二人称	your	your	yours	yours
第三人称	his	their	his	theirs
	her		hers	
	its		its	

- 2. 物主代词的用法
- (1) 形容词性物主代词放在名词前作定语。

That is our classroom. 那是我们的教室。

注意:在某些固定短语中,形容词性物主代词要随人称而变化。 如:do/ try one's best, change one's mind, do one's homework, on one's way to, save one's life 等。

(2) 名词性物主代词相当于"形容词性物主代词+名词",可作主语、表语或宾语。

This is your pen. Mine is in my pencil case. 这是你的钢笔。 我的在我的铅笔盒里。

(3) 用于双重所有格中,即"a/an+名词+of+名词性物主代词"。

He is a friend of mine. 他是我的一个朋友。

考点三 反身代词

1. 反身代词的单复数形式

数 人称	单数	复数
第一人称	myself	ourselves
第二人称	yourself	yourselves
第三人称	himself, herself, itself	themselves

- 2. 反身代词的用法
- (1) 作宾语,位于及物动词或介词之后。

The boy teaches himself English. 这个男孩儿自学英语。

(2) 作主语或宾语的同位语,用以加强语气,可以放在主语之后或句尾。

John himself did the work. =John did the work himself. 约翰亲自做了这项工作。

注意:反身代词不可作定语,常用"one's own"表示"某人自己的"。

This is my own car. 这是我自己的小汽车。

3. 反身代词常用于一些固定搭配中

teach oneself; learn...by oneself; enjoy oneself; devote oneself to; come to oneself; say to oneself; help oneself to; by oneself; for oneself

考点四 指示代词

. 7/	单数	复数
指近处	this	these
指远处	that	those

1. 作主语、宾语、表语。

This is a chair. 这是一把椅子。

2. 在电话中,用 this (我) 表示打电话者,用于介绍自己,用 that (你) 询问对方。

Hello! This is Bob (speaking). Who's that? 您好! 我是鲍勃。 你是哪位?

3. that 和 those 可以用在比较结构中,以避免重复。 that 代替前面提到的单数名词或不可数词;those 代替前面提到的复数可数名词。

The population of China is larger than that of Russia. 中国的人口比俄罗斯人口多。

考点五 疑问代词

1. 常见的疑问代词及其基本用法

疑问代词	基本用法	例句
who	作主语、表语或宾语(作宾语时,不能位于	Who are you waiting for? 你正在等谁?
111,00	介词后面)	
whom	who 的宾格形式,作宾语	With whom did you go? 你和谁一起去
(2)		的?
whose	who 的所有格形式,作主语、表语、宾语	Whose book is it? 它是谁的书?
	或定语	, and the second
what	作主语、表语、宾语或定语	What is he doing? 他正在做什么?

which	作主语、表语、宾语或定语	Which one is bigger?哪一个更大?

2. what 与 which 的区别

what 用于选择范围较大或不明确的场合,which 用于选择范围较小或较明确的场合。

Which is better, this one or that one? 哪一个更好,这个还是那个?

3. who 与 what 在口语中的用法区别

Who is he? 意思是"他是谁?"询问的是某个人的身份或姓名等。What is he? 意思是"他是干什么的?" 询问的是某人的职业。

- —Who is he? 他是谁?—He is Jenny's brother. 他是珍妮的哥哥。
- —What is he? 他是做什么的? —He is a doctor. 他是个医生。

考点六 不定代词

不指明代替任何特定名词的代词叫做不定代词,在句中可以作主语、宾语、表语、同位语等。 不定代词分为普通不定代词和复合不定代词。

1. 普通不定代词

主要有: some, any, both, all, another, other, each, either, neither, none, one, a few, few, a little, little, many, much 等。

2. 几种常见的普通不定代词的用法辨析

(1) one 与 it

相同点	单词	用法	例句
为了避免同一名词重复使用,	one	one 所代替的是前	I can't find my pen. I think I must buy a
常用 one 或 it 来代		面提到的同类事	new one.
替前面提到的某个单数名词	,	物,但不是同一个	我找不到我的钢笔了。我想我必须买
R. K.			一支新的。
	it	it 所代替的是前面	I bought a new pen yesterday, and I
111,00		提到的那个特指的	gave it to my sister.
		事物	我昨天买了一支新钢笔,我把它给我
(5)		33	妹妹了。

(2) some 与 any

相同点	单词	用法	W-X	例句
修饰可	some	陈述句		There are some boys playing football.

数或不		ΔX	有一些男孩们正在踢足球。
可数名词		疑问句	Would you like some water? 你想喝些水吗?
	any	否定句、疑问句或条件状语从句	There isn't any meat in the fridge.
		The J. Met J. Market	冰箱里没有肉了。

(3) both, all, neither, none, either = any

	7-100	之一	都	都不
适用范围	两者	either	both	neither
	三者或以上	any	all	none
固定短语	both and(连接)	两个主语,谓语	吾动词用复	(数)
1///	either or(连接闭	两个主语,谓词	吾动词遵循	就近原则)
	neither nor(连拉	妾两个主语,ì	胃语动词遵	循就近原则)

(4) little, a little, few 与 a few

	很少;几乎没有(表否定)	几个;一点儿(表肯定)
修饰可数名词	few	a few
修饰不可数名词	little	a little
例句	Don't worry! There is a little time le	ft. 别着急! 还有一点儿时间。
	He has a few friends here, but he ha	s few good friends.
W-W	在这里他有几个朋友,但是几乎没	有好朋友。

(5) other(s), the other(s), another

概念成	泛指剩下中的一	一部分(不用 the)	特指剩下中的全体(要用 the)	
份数 作主语/ 宾语 作定语(其		作定语(其后加名词)	作主语/ 宾语	作定语(其后加名词)
单数	another	another book	the other	the other book
复数	others	other books	the others	the other books

3. 复合不定代词

111

	-one	-thing	-body
some-	someone	something	somebody
any-	anyone	anything	anybody
every-	everyone	everything	everybody
no-	no one	nothing	nobody

(1) 一般情况下,由 some 构成的复合不定代词用在肯定句中;由 any 构成的复合不定代词用在疑问句和否定句中;由 no 构成的复合不定代词表示否定意义。

I have something to tell you. 我有事要告诉你。

I can't see anything. 我什么也看不见。

There's nothing I can do. 我什么也做不了。

(2) 形容词或 else 修饰不定代词时,通常位于不定代词之后。

Do you want anything else? 你还想要其他的东西吗?

考点七 代词 it 的用法

- 1. it 用来指除人以外的一切生物和事物,可指时间、距离、天气、温度、度量等。
- —What's the weather like today? 今天天气怎样?
- —It's sunny. 很晴朗。
- 2. it 可用来代替指示代词 this 和 that
- —What's this/ that? 这/ 那是什么?
- —It's an apple. 是苹果。
- 3. it 指婴儿或不明身份的人。

Is it a boy or a girl? 是男孩还是女孩?

4. it 代替动词不定式作形式主语。

It's important for us to work hard. 努力工作对我们来说很重要。

5. it 代替动词不定式作形式宾语。

I found it easy to work out the Math problem. 我发现算出这道数学题很容易。

巩固训练 (夯实基础)

一、单项选择

()1. — noteboo		
	A. Whose; he	B. Who; his C. Whose; his	D. Who; him
()2 —Morning class	Is here?—No sir Tom is absent	

A. anybody B. everybody C. nobody D. somebody	
()3.—Can you kick the ball to end of the football field?	
—It's hard for me. I think goalkeepers can make it.	
A. another; a little B. another; little C. the other; a few D. the other; few	Ÿ
()4. —Would you like tea or coffee? — I really don't care.	-
A. None B. Either C. Neither D. All	1
()5. —Mary tried on three dresses, but of them fitted her.	
—Don't worry. There are plenty of dresses there.	
A. both B. none C. all D. neither	
()6. —Who teaches Japanese? —Nobody. I teach (2012)	
A. your; mine B. your; my C. you; myself D. you; me	
()7.—TomJack has gone to the party because they have no time.	
—What a pity!	
A. Both; and B. Either; or C. Neither; nor D. None; or	
()8. —Who is Mr Li?	
—He is teacher and he teaches English.	
A. our; our B. us; us C. our; us D. us; our	
()9. As for learning English, students who read a lot can do much better than who don't.	
A. those B. that C. these D. them	
()10. —Hello, may I speak to Jane, please? —Speaking. Who's? (2013)	
A. this B. that C. he D. you	
二、用所给单词的正确形式填空	
1. Little Tom fell off his bike, but he didn't hurt (he).	
2. This ticket is for you. It's (you) now.	
3. What a cute dog! What's(it) name?	
4 (who) bike is this?	
5. I think (they) classroom is bigger and brighter than ours.	
6. This is an ice box, and (those) is a glass of water.	
7. When we grow up, we have to learn to take care of (our).	
8. Who help (she) clean the room?	
9. This magazine is not (my). It's his.	
10 (this) apples are five yuan a kilo.	
NO NEX	
•	
-111,00	

专题三 冠词

学前自测

()1. I really like _	guitar you bou	ght yesterday, Dad.		
	A. a	B. an		C. the	D. /
()2. Every night l	read books for	hour before going to	o bed.	
	A. a; a	B. an; /	C. an; the	D. a; /	///
()3. New York is o	one of biggest o	ities in the world, bu	t it doesn't have	long history.
	A. a; the	B. the; a	C. a; a	D. the; the	
()4. After school v	ve usually play	basketball for half a	n hour on pla	yground.
	A. the; the	B./;/	C. /; the	D. the; /	17111
()5. Our Chinese	teacher told us	interesting story and	l story was ab	out Thomas Edison
	A. an; a	B. an; the	C. the; a	D. the; the	
)6. —By the way	y, have you got]	Email address?		
	—Yes, of	course Email	address is happylife	@qq. com.	
) >/	A. a; An	B. an; The	C. a; The	D. the; The	
)7. —Are you lo	oking for another fla	ıt?		
7	—Yes. M	y mum said old	d one was too small a	after my younger br	other was born.
	A. a	B. an	C. the	D. /	
()8. —What do y	ou want to be when	you grow up?		
	—a	ctor like Chen Daon	ning. I really like his	performance on the	TV play.
	A. A	B. The	C. An	D. /	
()9. It is not far fro	om the hotel to	library. Actually, it i	s only 800-me	etre walk. (2015)
	A. /; a	B. the; an	C. /; an	D. the; a	
()10. Would you li	ke to have supp	er with us this S	Sunday?	~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~
	A. a; /	B. /;/	C. a; on	D. /; on	\7/\ C

常考考点知识清单

考点一 定冠词的基本用法

定冠词表示特指,指特定的人或物,它与可数名词或不可数名词都能连用。

1. 表示特指的人或物。

Is this the book that you are looking for? 这就是你正在找的书吗?

2. 表示双方都知道的或心中明白的人或物。

Please fill in the form and sign it. 请填写表格并签字。

3. 指上文提到过的人或物。

Cut up a tomato, and put the tomato on the bread. 将一个西红柿切碎,再将切碎的西红柿放在面包上。

4. 用于世界上独一无二的事物前。

The Earth moves around the sun. 地球围绕着太阳转。

5. 用于序数词前或表示方位的名词前和形容词最高级前。

It's the second country they will visit in Asia. 这是他们在亚洲要参观的第二个国家。

Beijing lies in the north of China. 北京位于中国的北边。

Autumn is the best season in Beijing. 秋天是北京最好的季节。

6. 用于乐器名称前。

He can play the violin well, but he can't play the piano. 他拉小提琴拉得很好,可他不会弹钢琴

7. 在复数姓氏前加 the,表示某某一家人或夫妇,常看成复数。

The Taylors were having dinner when I came in. 当我进来时,泰勒全家人/ 泰勒夫妇正在吃晚饭。

8. 用在一些形容词前,表示一类人。

The poor are against the plan, but the rich are for it. 穷人们反对这个计划,而富人们赞成。

9. 用于一些专有名词前。

the Great Wall 长城 the Yangtze River 长江

10. 用于表示某世纪逢十的年代之前。

in the 1990s 在 20 世纪 90 年代

11. 在一些习惯用语中。

the US 美国 the UK 英国 all the time 一直 by the way 顺便说一下

巧记: 定冠词 the 的用法

特指双方熟悉,上文已经提及;世上独一无二,方位以及乐器;

某些专有名词,外加复数姓氏;序数词最高级,习惯用语要特记。

考点二 不定冠词的基本用法

不定冠词有两个: a 和 an。 a 用于以辅音音素开头的单词前,而 an 用于以元音音素开头的单词前。 注意:有些单词,如 useful, university, European 等虽然是以元音字母开头,但却是以辅音音素开头,所 以前面要用 a;有些单词如 hour, honest 等虽然是以辅音字母开头,却是以元音音素开头,所以前面要 用 an。

1. 表示一类人或物。

My father bought me a present, but I don't know what it is. 我爸爸给我买了一件礼物,可我不知道是什么。

2. 用于第一次提到的某人或某物之前。

I saw a girl running on the playground. 我看见一个女孩正在操场上跑步。

3. 表示数量,有"一"的含义。

There is a picture on the wall. 墙上有一幅图画。

4. 有些不可数名词要表示"一种"、"一场"、"一堆"等时,要用不定冠词。

have a long history 拥有悠久的历史

5. 表示"每一",相当于 every。

Take three pills a day and you'll get better soon. 每天吃三片药,你很快就会好的。

6. 用于序数词之前,表示"又一";"再一"。

She has failed two times. She wants to try a third time. 她失败了两次。 她想再试一次。

7. 用于某些固定词组中。

have a good time 玩得高兴;a lot of 许多

巧记:不定冠词 a, an 的用法

冠词 a, an 两种帽,单数可数名词要。

选帽只要听读音,不看字母能做到;

若是元音音素来开头,一定需要选 an 帽;

辅音音素戴 a 帽,记住规律莫乱套。

考点三 零冠词的基本用法

1. 当专有名词(如人名、地名、国家名)、物质名词、抽象名词表示泛指时前面通常不用冠词。 Money is not everything. 金钱不是万能的。

China is a great country in the world. 中国是世界上一个伟大的国家。

2. 不可数名词或复数名词表示泛指时不用冠词。

Young people like to read books. 年轻人喜欢读书。

3. 在季节、月份、星期等表示时间的名词之前,不加冠词。

January 1st is New Year's Day. 一月一日是元旦。

4. 在称呼或表示官衔、职位的名词前不加冠词。

Doctor, I'm not feeling myself today. 医生,我今天感觉有些不舒服。

5. 在三餐、球类运动和娱乐运动的名称前,不加冠词。

What do you usually have for lunch? 你午餐经常吃什么?

Do you like playing football or baseball? 你喜欢踢足球还是打棒球?

6. 当 by 与火车等交通工具连用,表示一种方式时,中间无冠词。

Did you go there by plane or by ship? 你是乘飞机还是乘轮船去的那里?

7. 名词前面有物主代词、指示代词、不定代词或名词的所有格修饰时,前面不用冠词。

His book is on the desk. 他的书在桌子上。

巧记: 零冠词的用法

下列情况不用冠,名词之前代词限。 复数名词表泛指,球类学科和三餐。

专有名词不可数,星期月份季节前。 交通方式和娱乐,习语称谓和头衔。

考点四 常见含有冠词及不含冠词的词组

- 1. 常见含有冠词的词组
- (1) 常见含有不定冠词的词组

a little/ few/ bit; have a look/ rest/ cold/ fever; have a good time; in a hurry; a lot of; a great time; a number of; make a decision; make a living; make a face; make a mistake; in a word; take a bus/ train/ plane

(2) 常见含有定冠词的词

in the daytime; in the morning/afternoon/evening; in the middle of; in the end; in the open air; by the way; by the end of; at the beginning of; at the same time; at the moment; on the other side of; on the right/left; on the one hand; on the other hand

2. 常见的不含冠词的词组

at first/ last; at home/ school/ work; at noon/ night; by plane; all day and all night; in danger; in fact; in time; on time; on foot; watch TV; (stay/ be) in bed; go to school/ work/ bed

- 3. 有无冠词的几个注意点:
- (1) 单数名词前面加冠词或不定冠词以及复数名词前不用冠词都可表示某一类。

A dog is a useful animal. = The dog is a useful animal. =Dogs are useful animals. 狗是有用的动物。

(2) 序数词前面用定冠词表示"第几";用不定冠词表示"又一";"再一"。

Who can answer the first question? 谁能回答第一个问题?

I have had two apples. But I would like a third one. 我已经吃了两个苹果了。 但是我还想再吃一个。

(3) 某些固定短语中有无定冠词的区别:

无定冠词	有定冠词
at table 在吃饭	at the table 在桌子旁边(不一定在吃饭)
at/ in school 在上学	at/ in the school 在学校里(不一定是学生)
by sea 乘船	by the sea 在海边
go to bed 上床睡觉	go to the bed 走到床边(不一定是去睡觉)
in bed(睡、病、躺)在床上	in the bed 在床上
in class 在课上	in the class 在班级里
in front of 在(外部的)前面	in the front of 在(内部的)前面
in hospital(生病)住院	in the hospital 在医院里(不一定在住院)
on earth 究竟	on the Earth 在地球上

巩固训练 (夯实基础)

,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		
一、单项选择		
()1. —Do you know v	woman in red?	
—Yes, she is a teach	her of university.	
A. the; a B. a	c. the; an	D. /; the
()2. —What do you know abou	t England and Singapore?	
—England isEu	ropean country and Singapore is	Asian country.
A. an; an	nn; a C. a; a	D. a; an
()3.—Quickly! If we miss _	last bus, we'll have to go home	on foot.
—I'm coming.		
A. a; / B. t	the; a C. the; /	D. a; a
(//)4.—old man in b	rown coat over there is Mr Wang.	11.=X
—Let's go and say he	ello to him.	C.X.
A. An; a B. A	An; the C. The; a	D. The; the
()5. —How will you go to A	America? —By plane.	,,0)
A. / B. a	a C. the	O. an
()6. —Do you know the Do	ouble Ninth Festival? (2013)	b `
—Yes, I do. It remin	nds me to respect old.	
A. a B. a	an C. the	D. /
()7. —I had glass of mi	ilk for breakfast this morning.	—Oh, that's not enough.
A. an; a B. a	\ \\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\	D. a; the
X		pen to me? —OK. Here you are.
ACX	c. the; a	D. the; the
()9.—We will have me		
—Oh, I don't know	(A)	
	he; a C. a; the	D./;/
	girl and she is fond of playing	volleyball.
—Yes, she is.		40 100
A. an; a B. a;	the C. an; /	D. a; /
	×	
0		2///
50		
3	专题四 数词	
	文/区口 ————————————————————————————————————	/,
学前白测	-X	

C. Millions of

D. Several millions

)1. ____ people are sending and receiving text messages.

A. Million of

B. Several million of

()2. Before the new year,	people went	to visit	the flower market	t.
	A. thousands of B. 8 th	ousands of	C	. 8 thousand of	D. thousand of
()3. It's my daughter's birthday t	oday. She's	yea	rs old.	
	A. eighteen B. eigh	iteenth	C. the	eighteen	D. the eighteenth
()4. —Is it far from your hom	e to school?	—Not v	ery far, only	_• ·
	A. 15 minute's rides B. 1	5 minutes' rio	de C. 1	5 minute's ride	D. 15 minutes' rides
()5. Time isn't enough for me	. Can you gi	ve me _	?	
	A. two another minutes	B, mo	re two m	inutes	
	C. another minutes two	D. and	other two	minutes	X
()6. Each year sharks are ki	lled worldwi	de for th	eir fins(鱼鳍).	(X)
	A. million of B. mi	llions of	C. mar	ny millions	D. four millions
()7. It's about walk from	my home.			
	A. ten minute B. ten	minutes'	C. ten	minute's	D. ten-minutes
)8. The old man has son	s. Deal is the	e one	e. (2015)	<u> </u>
	A. three; two B. three	e; second	C. third	d; two	D. third; second
(>)9. This classroom is o	urs.			,0)
	A. three times big as	B. as	three tin	nes big as	
-	C. three times as big as	D. as	big three	e times as	•
()10. The basketball team of or	ır school ran	ks ir	the match.	
	A. three B. third	C. the	three	D. the third	

常考考点知识清单

考点一 基数词的用法及读法

1. 基数词的构成及读法

基数词	构成及读法	例词	
1 ~12	1~12 的基数词为特定的独立单词	one, two, three, four, five, six, seven,	
		eight, nine, ten, eleven, twelve	
13~19	13~19 的基数词皆以-teen 结尾,单词中的	thirteen, fourteen, fifteen, sixteen,	
	两个音节都读重音	seventeen, eighteen, nineteen	
20~90	20 为 twenty。 30~90 之间的整十基数词	twenty, thirty, forty, fifty, sixty, seventy,	
(2)	皆以-ty 结尾,第一个音节重读	eighty, ninety	
	注意:1.21~99 之间的各非整十数词须在十亿	立与个位之间加连字符"-"。 如:32	
	thirty-two		
	2. 读数字时,百位和十位之间、百位和个位之	之间加 and。 如:134 one hundred and	

	thirty-four; 106 one hundred and six	9//~		
英语中的	英语中的"万"用十千表示,"亿"用百个百万	forty thousand 四万;two hundred		
"万""亿"	来表示	million 两亿		
其他数词	1000 以上的数字,从后向前数,每三位加","。	第一个","前为 thousand,第二个","前为		
	mil-lion,第三个","前为 one billion 或 one the	ousand million。 每一节从左到右按百、		
	十、个的顺序表示。			
	如:243, 621, 304, 782 读作:two hundred and fo	orty-three billion, six hundred and		
4	twenty-one mil-lion, three hundred and four tho	busand, seven hundred and eighty-two		
其他数词	注意:hundred, thousand, million, billion 表示	确定的数目时不用复数形式。 后面跟名		
-7/1/	词时,名词需用复数形式;如果这四个基数词局	后面跟 of 表示概数,则此四个基数词必		
	须用复数形式。 如:	W-X		
	thousands of 成千的	-177		
T 7. /				

2. 基数词的用法

(1) 基数词在句中可用作主语、宾语、表语和定语。

Twenty of them are Young Pioneers. 他们当中有二十个是少先队员。

(2) 用于名词之后表示顺序编号。

Please open your books and turn to Page 28. 请打开书翻到第 28 页。

(3) 基数词可表示年份、时间(钟点)、电话号码、年龄等。

I was born on July 12, 1989. 我出生在 1989 年 7 月 12 日。

(4) 表示"世纪年代",用"in+the+基数词复数"。

in the 1990s 在 20 世纪 90 年代

(5) in one's+整十的基数词复数表示"在某人……多岁时"。

The old woman is in her nineties. 这位老太太九十多岁了。

(6)"数词+连字符+单数名词"或"数词+连字符+单数名词+连字符+形容词"构成复合形容词作定语。

We have a seven-day holiday in October. 在 10 月我们有一个 7 天的假期。

She is an eight-year-old Chinese girl. 她是一个 8 岁的中国女孩。

考点二 序数词的构成及用法

1. 序数词的构成及读法

范围	特点	A.K	例词
		-!/^- N	

1 ~3	特殊记	first, second, third
4~19	在大多数基数词末尾直接加-th	fourth, seventeenth
	八去 t,九减 e,f 来把 ve 替	eighth, ninth, fifth, twelfth
20 ~90	把基数词后面的 y 变为 i 再加-eth	twentieth, ninetieth
21 以上的多位数	个位数用序数词,其余用基数词	twenty-first, one hundred and sixty-eighth

2. 序数词的用法

(1) 序数词在句中可用作定语、主语、宾语和表语,前面要加定冠词 the。

The first is always better than the second. 第一总是比第二好。

She will choose the third. 她将选择第三个。

(2) 序数词前面可以用形容词性物主代词或名词所有格修饰,此时序数词前面不加定冠词 the。

This is my third time to Shanghai. 这是我第三次去上海。

(3) 不定冠词 a/an 与序数词连用,表示"又一;再一"。

I have been to Beijing twice, but I would like to go there a third time. 我去过北京两次,但是我想再去一次那里。

巩固训练 (夯实基础)

A. four time

_,	平 坝选择
()1. — trees were cut down. And many birds lost their home. —I am sorry to hear that.
	A. Two thousands B. Thousands of C. Thousand of D. Two thousand of
()2. Mr Zhang asked me question before I could answer
	A. the two; the first B. a second; a first
	C. a second; the first D. the second; a first
()3. —Is there today? —Yes, a boy was killed by an accident today. (2018)
	A. anything new; ten-year-old B. new anything; ten years old
1	C. anything new; ten years old D. new anything; ten-year-old
)4. —Can you read "1245"? —Yes. It's
	A. one thousand and two hundred and forty five
4,	B. one thousand, two hundred and forty-five
	C. one thousand, two hundred and forty five
	D. one thousand, two hundreds and forty-five
()5. —There are thirty students in our class. —And of them are boys.
	A. two third B. second third C. two thirds D. second threes
()6. —You have failed three times. —But I would like

C. a fourth time

D. a four times

B. four times

()7. —Mary, what is three times three? —It's	
A. six B. sixth C. nine D. ninth	
()8. —Can I book a room now? —Of course is available now.	
A. The 405 Room B. 405 Room C. The Room 405 D. Room 405	~
()9. —Do you know when is National Day? —It's on	
A. first the October B. October the first	
C. one of October D. October of the first)
()10. —What do you know about the letter? —It was written in	
A. 1480's B. 1480s C. the 1480s D. the 1480	
二、用所给单词的正确形式填空	
1. Father's Day is on the (three) Sunday in June every year.	
2. I go to the gym (one) a week.	
3. Today is my (twenty) birthday.	
4. There are (fiftieth) people in the playground.	
5. We have meals three (time) a day.	
6. My eldest brother wrote his first poem in his (thirty).	
7 (Thousand) of people became homeless because of the earthquake.	(1)
8. Three (hundred) children took part in the activity.	
9. I would like to have a (two) banana though I have had one.10. It's September the (nine) today.	
专题五 介词	
学前自测	
()1. I lost my way a rainy night and my parents were quite worried me.	
A. in; about B. on; about C. at; with D. on; with	
()2. When our parents are not at home, we need toourselves.	
A. look after B. look at C. look up D. look around	
()3. When did your aunt arriveChina? —She got to Guangzhouthe morning of May	
15th.(2016)	
A. at; in B. in; in C. to; on D. in; on	
()4. It's very nice you to pick me up at the bus station.	
A. for B. to C. of D. with	
()5. —What does your English teacher look like? —She is a pretty lady long straight hair.	
A. on B. with C. of D. for	

			7 . `	
()6. —When is your summer	vacation?			
—It begins July	15th and I don't h	ave to go to s	school until A	ugust 31th.
A. on B	. in C. a	it	D. by	
()7. I paid about 100 dollars _	the new clothe	es.		
A. for B	. on C	. to	D. of	
()8. The earthquake happened in	n Yunnan Province	e a cold	morning of D	December.
	. at	C. to	D. on	////
()9. —What happened to Mark			snowy morni	ing.
A. in B. at	C. on	D. when		
()10. —Mum, where are my soo	•			
A. put on B	. put down	C. pu	it away	D. put off
244 to the Art No. 10 No.				. Kla
常考考点知识清单			11X	
考点一 常用介词的主要用法		1	C.T.	
1. in 的主要用法			1/2	
(1) 表示在某年、某月、某季节,在	上午、下午、晚	上等。	100	
I will come and see you in the aftern	oon. 下午我来看	你。		
(2) 在以后。	/-	7	C	
I will come back in a week. 我将于	一周之后回来。	-000		
(3) 在里。	,=///	10		
The two brothers study in the same c	lass. 两兄弟在同	一个班里上	课。	
(4) 穿着;戴着。				_Y
The man in black is Li Ming's brothe	er. 穿着黑色衣服	的那个人是	李明的哥哥。	
(5)(表示手段、方法、材料)用;以。				
People used to write in ink. 人们过		之 .		×7/> 0
2. on 的主要用法	公司司(司至八号)	, •		11 00°
11X	的 [左] 元十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二十二	144. L	٠,	CONT.
(1) 表示在具体的某一天或某一天			多元 自由 口 数	4 H/2 () 1/2=
My birthday party will be held on Su	inday evening.	的生日衆会	将任星期日的	小晚上举行。
(2) 在上。				
The books are on the desk. 书在课身	是上。		1///	•
(3) 关于;有关。				
Why not give her some advice on lea	arning English wel	11? 为什么不	给她一些关	于学好英语的建议呢?
(4) 以方式;通过。	_	N	11	
Did you hear it on the radio? 你是从	、收音机里听到这	条消息的吗	?	
3. for 的主要用法	- IZA			

(1) 表示时间、距离,意为"计;达"。

We will stay there for two days. 我们将在那里逗留两天

(2) 表示"当作;作为"。

I like some bread and milk for breakfast. 我喜欢把面包和牛奶作为早餐。

(3) 表示理由或原因,意为"因为;由于"。

I want to go back for my pen. 我想回去拿我的钢笔。

(4) 表示动作的对象或接受者,意为"给……";"对……(而言)"。

Let me pick it up for you. 让我为你捡起来。

(5) 表示去向、目的,意为"向;往;取;买"等。

I came here for my schoolbag. 我来这儿取书包。

(6) 表示所属关系或用途,意为"为;适于……的"。

Here is a letter for you. 这儿有你的一封信。

(7) 表示"支持;赞成",反义词是 against。

Are you for this plan or against it? 你是支持还是反对这个计划?

- 4. by 的主要用法
- (1) 靠;用;通过。

My mother goes to work by bike. 我妈妈骑自行车去上班

(2) 被;由。

This skirt was made by my mother. 这条短裙是我妈妈做的。

(3) 在......旁边。

There are many trees by the river. 河边有许多树。

(4) 不迟于;在……之前。

We have to get there by evening. 我们必须在夜晚前抵达那里。

- 5. with 的主要用法
- (1) 与.....一起;偕同;和。

She lives with her son. 她和儿子住在一起。

(2) 有;具有;带有。 反义词是 without。

The girl with long hair is my classmate. 长头发的那个女孩是我同学

(3) 以(手段、材料);用(工具)。

My American friend is learning to eat with chopsticks. 我的一位美国朋友在学着用筷子吃饭。

考点二 常用介词词组

1. 动词+介词

look after/ at/ for/ like; laugh at; listen to; hear from/ of; wait for; worry about; talk about/ to/ with; think of/ about; pay for; knock at/ on; shout at/ to; arrive at/ in; get to; ask for; send for; play with; come/ be from; work on; agree with; add to; belong to; devote to; do/ deal with

2. 介词+名词

by train; on foot; at the end of; at last/ first; in the end; in trouble; in danger; in surprise; at table; at breakfast; in hospital; in/ on time; on one's way to; with pleasure; at times; for example; for fun; in bed; in public; on earth;

on business; on duty; on foot; on show; on sale; in style

3. be+形容词+介词

be afraid of; be good at; be good/bad for; be late for; be interested in; be angry with; be full of; be sorry for; be

worried about; be famous for; be mad at; be ready for; be different from; be busy with; be strick with/ in; be proud of; be opposite to

考点三 易混介词归纳

- 1. 表示时间的介词
- (1) 词语辨析:in, on 与 at

			X 1 / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /
	介词	适用范围	例子
在	in	表示在某年、某月、季节、	in 2019, in September, in summer, in the 1890s, in the
某		世纪、上午、下午、晚上等	morning/ afternoon/ evening
个	on	在具体的某一天或某一天	on Monday, on Tuesday afternoon, on May 4th, on the
时		的上午、	morning of July 6th, on a windy night
间		下午或晚上等	
	at	跟具体的钟点	at six o'clock, at ten thirty
	**	at 用于和时间有关的固定	at noon, at midnight, at first, at last, at night, at the age
		短语	of, at the beginning of

(2) 词语辨析:in, after

在	in+一段	指从说话时算起来	与将来时	My sister will come back in three weeks. 我
之后	时间	的一段时间之后	连用	姐姐将在三周后回来。
	after+—	以过去时间为起点	与过去时	She came to Shanghai last month and after a
	段时间	的一段时间之后	连用	week she flew to New York. 她上个月来的

上海,一周后她就飞往纽约了。

(3) 词语辨析:since, for

since 和 for 都可与现在完成时连用,since 表示从过去的某一时刻一直延续到现在,后面跟过去的时间状语;for 表示动作延续贯穿整个过程,后面跟一段时间。

Mr Green has worked in this city since 2000. 自 2000 年以来格林先生就在这座城市工作。

I have studied here since three years ago. 自从三年前我就在这里学习。

Bob has collected stamps for ten years. 鲍伯收集邮票有十年的时间了。

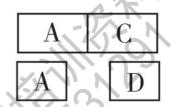
- 2. 表示方位的介词
- (1) 词语辨析:in, on 与 to

三者的区别可用图示表示如下:

in 表示在范围内, eg: B is in the east of A.

on 表示两地接壤, eg: C is on the east of A.

to 表示在范围外, eg: D is to the east of A.



(2) 词语辨析:above, over, on, below, under, beneath

above, over 与 on 意思都是"在……的上面",below, under 与 beneath 意思都是"在……的下面"。 above 表示在某物体的上方,但与物体不接触也不一定垂直,其反义词是 below。 over 表示在某物体的正上方,与物体垂直但不接触,其反义词是 under。 on 表示在物体的表面之上,与物体相接触,其反义词是 beneath。

Planes fly above the white clouds. 飞机在白色的云朵上面飞翔。

All the fields are below the planes. 所有的田地都在飞机的下面。

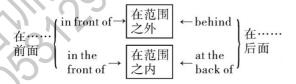
There is a bridge over the river. 河上有座桥。

My shoes are under the bed. 我的鞋在床下面。

My books are on the desk. 我的书在课桌上。

(3) 词语辨析:in front of 与 in the front of; behind

与 at the back of





There is a library in front of / behind the post office. 在邮局的前面/ 后面有一个图书馆。

Mike sits in the front of / at the back of the classroom. 迈克坐在教室的前面/ 后面。

(4) 词语辨析:between, among

between 强调在两者之间,但后面接三者或三者以上时,是把物体分别看待,表示每两者之间;among 强调在三者或三者以上之间。

ш	H	示表示为	
ш	ľXI	$\pi \times \pi \times \tau$	ı٠
/ 11	ᅜ	ハベハン	١.

	□ ▲ □ between
□□▲□ among	1-1

The cinema is between the bank and the library. 电影院在银行和图书馆之间。

The teacher usually stands among us. 老师通常站在我们中间。

3. 表示方向的介词

词语辨析:across, through 与 over

单词	意思	方式	例句
across	横过	指从这边到另一边	Be careful when you walk across the street. 当你横穿街
	•		道时要小心。
through	穿过	从一个物体的空间	The boy looks at things through his glasses. 这个男孩通
		里穿过	过他的眼镜看东西。
over	翻越	从物体上方经过,	Who can jump over the wall? 谁能翻过这面墙?
		翻过	X CO

4. 表示交通方式的介词:by, in 与 on

by 后面直接跟交通方式的名词;如果名词前面有限定词修饰,则用 on 或 in。

My father goes to work by bike every day. =My father goes to work on a bike every day. 我爸爸每天骑自行车去上班。

注意: on 表示交通方式时,还常用于短语 on foot, walk to work=go to work on foot.

5. 表示手段或工具的介词:by, in 与 with

介词	用法	例句
by	表示使用某种方式或手段,名词前面不加	I like to eat the dumplings made by hand. 我
70	任何冠词	喜欢吃手工包的饺子。
in	表示使用某种语言或某种材料,名词前面	Can you say it in English? 你能用英语说它
	不加任何冠词	吗?

with 后面跟具体的工具,名词前需加冠词或 I do my homework with a pen. 我用钢笔做我 形容词性物主代词 的家庭作业。

6. 与"制成"有关的介词短语

词语辨析:be made of, be made from, be made into, be made in

[of+材料(能看出原材料)

- (1) 成品+be made { (……由……制成) from+材料(不能看出原材料)
- (2) 材料+be made into+成品(.....被制成.....)
- (3) 某物+be made in+地点(某物产于某地)

This kind of wine is made from grapes. 这种酒是用葡萄制成的。

The house is made of wood. 这座房子是用木头制成的。

Glass is made into glasses. 用玻璃制成玻璃杯。

7. 表示"除了"的介词

词语辨析:except 与 besides

except 表示"除……外",指除去的不算在内,except 的宾语排除在外;besides 表示"除……外,还有",besides 的宾语也算在内。 but 表示"除外"时,与 except 同义,但是 but 常和 no one, nobody, nothing 等表示否定意义的词连用。

They went there except Tom. 除了汤姆他们都去那里了。

Besides Maths, I like Chinese and English. 除了数学,我还喜欢语文和英语。

There is nobody in the classroom but Li Lei. 除了李磊,教室里没有人。

巩固训练 (夯实基础)

一、单项选择

()1.—I think drinking mill	k is good	_our health. —I agree	you.
	A. for; with	B. of; to	C. for; to	D. of; to
)2. —Guess, how much de	oes this bag cost? -	—I think it costs15 a	and 20 dollars.
	A. from	B. between	C. among	D. with
()3. —When were you born	n? —I was born _	the evening of June	
5	A. at; first	B. to; thirtieth	C. on; the twelfth	D. in; ninth
)4. My friend Ann, often pr	actices English	chatting with her Amer	rican friend.
	A. in	B. by	C. for	D. with
()5. —Your dress is so nice	e. Is it made	silk?—Yes, and it is made	Beijing.
	A. of; in	B. by; at	C. from; at	D. of; at
()6. —When will your parer	nts come back from	n China?— three wee	eks' time.

	A. Of	B. In	C. At	D. With
()7. —Tom, hurry up	! It's time school.	—I know, Mum. But I can	n't find my schoolbag.
	A. to	B. of	C. for	D. in
()8. —Where is Bei	jing, Maria? —Mm	.It's the northeast of	China.
	A. in	B. on	C. at	D. to
()9. —We can't go	outside the heavy	rain. —Then we can pla	y a computer game.
	A. instead of	B. because of	C. after all	D. out of
()10. —Yang Mi is	very popular us.	—Yes. She is one of m	y favourite stars.
	A. for	B. of	C. with	D. to
	17 NO S	专题六	形容词和副词	
学真	前自测		-1//>	
())1. They looked at the	ne screen, and all	of them looked very	0),
	A. careful; nervo	usly B. c	arefully; nervous	
7	C. careful; nervou	D. c	arefully; nervously	
()2. I am sorry this coa	nt is not big enough. I w	ant a one.	
	A. bigger	B. big	C. small	D. smaller
()3. Mary has been il	l in bed for a week. I w	onder if she is now.	
	A. much better	B. some better	C. any better	D. very better
()4. My brother can't	speak English as a	s me, but he is at mat	h than me. (2019)
	A. well; good	B. well; better	C. good; better	D. good; well
()5. My grandma tolo	I me a good story, but I	told a one.	//\
	A. good	B. better	C. best	D. worse
()6. The volunteer sp	oke as as she coul	d to make visitors unders	tand her.
	A. clearer	B. clear	C. clearly	D. more clearly
()7. —Are you feeli	ng better after seeing th	e doctor?	12 00°
	—I'm afraid	not. I am than ye	sterday.	N NO
	A. bad	B. much worse	C. more worse	D. much more worse
()8. —Did Bobby d	o his best in the final ex	tam?	, ·
6	—No, but or	f all the students he did		
2,-	A. most carefully		B. much more	careful
	C. much more can	refully	D. the most can	reful
(irt to the evening party?	
	—OK! But a	a dress might be		
	A. good	B. well	C. better	D. best

- ()10. Hangzhou is one of ____ I have ever seen.
 - A. the more wonderful place

B. the more wonderful places

C. the most wonderful places

D. the most wonderful place

常考考点知识清单

考点一 形容词的用法及位置

- 1. 形容词的用法
- (1) 形容词是用来描写或修饰名词(或代词)的一类词。 形容词在句中作定语、表语、宾语补足语等成份。

Peter is tall. 彼得个子高。 (作表语)

We must keep our room clean. 我们必须保持我们的教室干净。 (作宾补)

She has short hair. 她留短发。 (作定语)

(2) 多个形容词修饰一个名词时,其顺序为:限定词(冠词、指示代词等)+数词+描述性形容词+大小、长短、高低等形容词+形状+新旧+颜色+国籍+材料性质+用途类别。

a small round table 一张小圆桌, a dirty old brown shirt 一件又脏又旧的棕色衬衣

巧记: 多个形容词作定语的顺序口诀

限定描述大长高,形状年龄与新老;颜色国籍出材料,用途类别往后靠。

(3) 某些形容词加上定冠词可以泛指一类人,谓语动词用复数,如:the dead, the living, the rich, the poor, the blind 等。

The poor are in great need of help. 穷人们非常需要帮助。

(4) 有关国家和民族的形容词加上定冠词指这个民族的整体,谓语动词用复数,如:the British, the English, the French, the Chinese 等。

The Chinese are hard-working. 中国人是勤奋努力的。

- 2. 形容词的位置
- (1) 形容词作定语时一般放在修饰词的前面。

I think it's an interesting book. 我觉得这是一本有趣的书。

(2) 形容词修饰不定代词时放在不定代词之后。

She has something important to tell us. 她有重要的事情要告诉我们

考点二 副词的用法及位置

1. 副词的功能及用法

副词是用以修饰动词、形容词、其他副词以及全句的词,表示时间、地点、程度、方式等概念。

(1) 作状语,修饰动词、形容词、其他副词和全句。

The students are working hard in school. 学生们在学校努力学习。

(2) 作表语,多数与介词同形的副词以及一些表示位置的副词都可以用作表语。

I'm afraid I must be off now. 恐怕我现在得走了

(3) 作宾语补足语。

I saw him out just now. 刚才我看见他出去了。

(4) 作定语。

The people here are hard-working. 这里的人们是很勤劳的。

- 2. 副词的位置
- (1)修饰动词,多数位于动词之后,及物动词的宾语之后。

She speaks English well. 她英语说得很好。

(2) 频度副词(always, never, often 等)通常放在行为动词之前,情态动词、be 动词、助动词之后。 但是 sometimes 位置较灵活,还可以放在句子的开头和结尾。

My sister sometimes has lunch at school. =Sometimes my sister has lunch at school. =My sister has lunch at school sometimes. 我姐姐有时候在学校吃午饭。

(3) 修饰形容词或副词,放在被修饰词之前。

He has a very nice watch. 他有一块非常漂亮的手表。

(4) 作表语,放在系动词后。

She is out at the moment. 此刻她在外面。

(5) 作宾语补足语,放在宾语之后。

Please have them in. 请让他们进来。

(6) 修饰全句,放在句首。

Perhaps/ Maybe he's watching TV at home. 也许他正在家里看电视。

(7) enough 修饰形容词或副词放在形容词、副词之后。

He is old enough to go to school. 他足够大了能去上学了。

考点三 形容词、副词比较级与最高级

1. 构成

(1) 规则变化

构成	原级	比较级	最高级
一般单音节词末尾加-er,-est	tall	taller	tallest
以不发音的字母 e 结尾的单音词只加-r,-st	nice	nicer	nicest
以一个辅音字母结尾的重读闭音节单词,双写末尾的辅	big	bigger	biggest

音字母,再加-er,-est		•	
"以辅音字母+y"结尾的双音节词,改 y 为 i,再加-er,-est	busy	busier	busiest
其他双音节词和多音节词,在前面加 more, most 来构成	important	more	most
比较级和最高级		important	important

(2) 不规则变化

原级 -	比较级	最高级
good/ well	better	best
bad/ badly/ ill worse		worst
much/ many	more	most
little	less	least
far	farther/ further	farthest/ furthest

2. 用法

(1) 形容词比较等级的用法

比较 等级	用法	例句
原级	肯定句中用"as+原级形容词+as"的结构	My handwriting is as beautiful as yours.我的书法和你的一样好。
~	否定句中用"not as/ so+原级形容词+as"结构	Rose is not as/ so tall as Mary. 露丝没有玛丽高。
	两者之间的比较用"形容词比较级+than"	You look much younger than I do. 你看上去比我年轻多了。
比	两者比较也可以用"the+比较级+of 短语(比较范围)",表示"两者中较的那一个"	It is the narrower of the two streets. 这是两条街道中比较窄的一条。
较级	"比较级+and+比较级"或"more and more+原级", 表示"越来越"	Our country is getting stronger and stronger.我们的国家变得越来越强大。
	"the + 比较级… the + 比较级…"表示"越, 越"	The more difficult the problem is, the more careful we should be.问题越难,我们就越应小心。

	the+形容词最高级+名词+表示范围的短语或 从句	Luke is the fastest runner of the three boys. 鲁克是这三个男孩中跑得最快的。
最高级	one of the+最高级,表示"是最之一"	Qingdao is one of the most beautiful cities in China. 青岛是中国最美丽的城市之一。
77	比较级 + than + any other + 名词单数/ anyone else/ anything else 或比较级+ than + all other+名词复数表示最高级的含义	Time is more valuable than anything else. 时间是最珍贵的东西。

(2) 副词比较等级的用法

比较等级	用法	例句	
原级	肯定句中用"as+原级副词+as"的结构	I love music as much as Betty does. 我和贝蒂一样喜欢音乐。	
	否定句中用"not as/ so+原级副词+as"结构	She can't use the computer so/ as well as you. 她电脑没有你运用得好。	
	用" times + as+原级副词+as"的形式 表示倍数	This car runs three times as fast as that one. 这辆车的行驶速度是那辆车的三倍。	
	"副词的比较级+than"句式	She comes here less often than before. 她不像以前那样经常来这里了。	
比较级	no+比较级 than和 not+比较级 than	John speaks Chinese no more fluently than his younger brother. 约翰汉语说得和他弟弟一样都不流畅。	
级	比较级+and+比较级	She plays the piano more and more beautifully. 她钢琴弹得越来越好。	
	the+比较级, the+比较级	The harder you work, the better you will learn. 你越努力,学得就会越好。	
最高级	(the)+副词最高级+表示范围的短语或从句	He talks (the) least and does (the) most in his class.他是班上说得最少干得最多的人。	

巩固训练(夯实基础)

一、单项选择

()1. —Tom, do y			
	A. fewer	B. the fewest	C. less	D. the least
()2. —I can	believe that Linda won the comp	petition.	
	—Me_t	oo. She didn't prepare at all.		

		A. hard	B. hardly	C. almost	D. nearly
	()3. When winter com	es, days get		
		A. long and long		B. short and short	
		C. longer and long	ger	D. shorter and shorter	7-11
	()4. —You are not	to carry the box.	—But I think I can.	i X +
		A. weak enough	B. enough weak	C. strong enough	D. enough strong
	()5. —Who is Jack?	—He is my bro	ther. He is two years than n	ne.
		A. elder; older	B. older; older	C. elder; elder	D. older; elder
	()6. —How can I im	prove my English?		
		—you	work at it, pro	ogress you will make.	AXXXIIIA
		A. The harder; the	more	B. The more hardly; the more	
		C. The hardlier; th	e greater	D. The harder; the greater	
	()7. Jack's pants are a	as as Jim's.	1	
		A. cheap	B. cheaper	C. the cheaper	D. the cheapest
	()8. —There iss	now on the road.	Yes, and it is cold today.	
.x.\)//	A. too much; much	h too	B. too much; too much	
		C. much too; much	n too	D. much too; too much	/
	(-)9. —The result was	s so —And v	we were all at the result.	
		A. disappointed; d	isappointed	B. disappointed; disappointing	ng
		C. disappointing;	disappointed	D. disappointing; disappointi	ng
	()10. Traffic is heavy	and the price of oil i	s much than before so that	many people go to work by
	bus	instead.	11///	NO	-X-X
		A. higher	B. high	C. expensive	D. more expensive
					111/2-01
	二、	用所给单词的正确形	 式填空		
	1. T	he team got the first pla	ace(s	uccess).	× 10.00
	2. T	his box is heavy, but the	at one is	(heavy).	11- 00 J
	3. W	Ve all feel (exc	cite) after hearing th	e news.	LATO STAN
	4. C	Computers make it	(easily) for us to co	mmunicate with each other.	X
	5. N	Iy bike is	(expensive) that	n yours.	
		can speak French as			
		alice was (deep	·	Y,\)7/,	•
/= //		am going to go abroad		1512. 137	>
X+C		o you know that Dr Jai		onder) doctor?	
	10.	My brother is the	_(tall) of the three.	. 1/10.	
300			N.	->	
			R.		
•					
			- 1111	9	
			ZY VI	244	
		7	\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\	314	
		LX4	-0,2		

专题七 被动语态

学前自测

()1. Don't worry. Your pack	age here un	til you come back, so er	njoy shopping here.
	A. has kept	B. will keep	C. has been kept	D. will be kept
()2. John to come to the	teacher's office ju	st now. He may be in tr	ouble.
	A. was told	B. told	C. has told	D. tells
()3. —I haven't seen John for	many years. Hov	v's he going?	
	—He broke the law a	nd to prison	2 years ago.	
	A. has sent	B. were sent	C. was sent	D. was sending
)4. —Where are your dogs,	Mickey? —Th	e dogs to the pet of	entre last week.
	A. is sent	B. was sent	C. are sent	D. were sent
(-)5. Some beautiful flowers	to her daught	ter on her last birthday.	0, ,
	A. are given	B. are giving	C. were given	D. were giving
(-)6. —It's difficult for the vil	lage children to cr	ross the river to school.	
	—I agree with you. I	think a bridge	_over the river.	
	A. will build	B. is built	C. should be built	D. was built
()7. Mr Green 2 minute	s to think about th	ne final decision.	
	A. gives	B. gave	C. was given	D. will give
()8. —Sandy to be hard-	working by her pa	rents. —So am I.	
	A. asks	B. is asking	C. asked	D. is asked
()9. I wonder if the talent sho	ownext month	n. If they it, I mus	t get ready for it.
	A. will hold; hold	В	. will hold; will hold	\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\
	C. will be held; hold	D	. is held; will hold	75.7
()10. The garden while	the Greens were a	away from home.	N. T. T.
	A. took good care of	В	. was taken good care o	f -///
.\	C. taken good care of	D	. was taking good care	2
	(20)			

常考考点知识清单

英语动词有主动语态和被动语态之分。 主动语态的句子中主语是动作的执行者,而被动语态的句子中主语是动词的承受者。 只有及物动词或相当于及物动词的短语动词,才能构成被动语态。

考点一 各种时态被动语态的构成

时态	被动语态构成	7 1/2 X	例句
H 1 1/02		CK	· VI 73

一般现在时	is/ am/ are + done	The classroom is cleaned every day. 教室每天被打扫。
一般过去时	was/ were + done	The dumplings were made yesterday. 饺子是昨天包的。
现在进行时	is/ am/ are + being + done	The room is being cleaned now. 现在房间正在被打扫。
过去完成时	had + been + done	The two roads had been built by the end of last month.
	17-0	到上个月末为止,两条公路被建成了。
一般将来时	shall/ will + be + done	A new hospital will be built next year.
		明年一个新的医院将被建成。
过去将来时	should/would + be + done	Mike said a new film would be shown.
-7/1/	000	迈克说一部新电影将上映。
含有情态动词	情态动词+ be + done	The work must be finished on time.
		必须按时完成这项工作。

考点二 被动语态的用法

1. 不知道或没有必要说明动作的执行者是谁。

Some new computers were stolen last night. 昨晚一些新电脑被偷了。

2. 强调动作的承受者,而不强调动作的执行者。

The homework must be handed in on time. 作业必须按时交上来。

3. 说话或发表意见时,为了显得客观公正,也常用被动语态。 常用句型:

It is said that... 据说...... It is reported that...据报道......

It is hoped that... 希望..... It is believed that... 人们相信.....

考点三 主动语态转化为被动语态的方法

- 1. 把主动语态的宾语变为被动语态的主语。
- 2. 把谓语动词变为被动结构(be+过去分词),注意虽然其人称和数随主语的变化而变化,但动词的时态保持不变。
- 3. 把主动语态中的主语放在介词 by 之后作宾语,若主语是人称代词,则把主格变为宾语(by 短语可以省略)。

考点四 被动语态的几种特殊情况

1. make, see, watch, hear, notice, feel 等使役动词和感官动词在主动语态中与省略 to 的动词不定式连用,但变为被动语态时,必须还原 to。

I often see the old man run in the morning. 我经常看到这位老人在早上跑步。

The old man is often seen to run in the morning. 这位老人经常被看见在早上跑步。

2. 一些动词短语用于被动语态时,动词短语应视为一个整体,而不能丢掉其中的介词或副词。

The little dog must be looked after well. 这条小狗必须被好好照顾。

考点五 主动语态表被动意义的几种情况

1. 不及物动词与状语连用,用以表示主语的品质和状态。 常见的动词是:cut, sell, read, write, fill, cook lock, wash, drive, keep 等。

The books sell well. 这些书卖得很好

2. 系动词无被动语态。

The apples taste nice. 苹果尝起来很好吃。

3. 不定式在某些形容词之后,且与主语有动宾关系。

The question is difficult to answer. 这个问题是很难回答的。

4. "have/get+宾语+过去分词"这个结构也表达了一种被动的意思。

I'll have the bike repaired soon. 我将尽快请人修理这辆自行车

5. 在 need 后面,主动的-ing 形式表达被动的意思。

Your vegetables need watering. 你的蔬菜需要浇水了

巩固训练(夯实基础)

)7. —The tallest building

– ,	单项选择	/////// N	O	
()1. —How do you lik	te the soccer game last Tu	uesday?	
	—Oh, it was s	urprising. The strongest t	eam of our school _	·
	A. was beaten	B. won	C. beaten	D. is beaten
()2. —Can you go ot	it now?		
	—No. I can't	go out until my homewo	rk	V1.
	A. finishes	B. is finished	C. has finished	D. finished
()3. The leader said th	at much attention must _	these details.	,7/1/
1	A. pay	B. be paid	C. pay to	D. be paid to
)4. —The kitchen	now. —But who	it?	
41	A. was being clear	ned; was cleaning	B. is cleaned; cle	aned
	C. is being cleaned	l; is cleaning	D. was cleaned;	cleaned
(-)5. —The old man is	seen every morning	g. —So he is.	
	A. running	B. run	C. to run	D. ran
()6. —Mrs Green, yo	our vegetables need	. —I know.	
	A. to water	B. being water	C. watering	D. watered

by the end of last month. —That's good news.

A. has been built B. had been built C. was built D. were built
()8. —The books should to the library on time. —All right.
A. be got B. send C. give back D. be returned
()9. —What did Tom say just now? —He said that a new film the next day.
A. is shown B. shown C. would be shown D. will be shown
()10. —I to go out at night. —That's a strict rule.
A. am allowed B. am not allowed C. allow D. was not allowed
二、用所给单词的正确形式填空
1. A new international airport (complete) in the city next year.
2. —Who's the little girl in the photo, Laura?
—It's me. This photo (take) when I was five.
3. The weatherman says a rain shower (expect) this afternoon in the south.
4. People, especially the young, (easily influence) by their friends.
5. The game (play) next month.
6. Dr Bethune (still remember) in both China and Canada today.
7. Look at the trees on both sides of the streets. They (plant) last spring.
8. Paper-making (invent) by the Chinese in the Western Han dynasty.
9. You needn't throw it away. It can(recycle).
10. We Chinese (encourage) by the touching documentary Amazing China.
专题八 简单句的种类
1/2/ C 1/3 1 3H3 11 3C
学前自测
()1. He needs your help. You and give him a hand.
A. should to stay B. shouldn't stay C. ought not stay D. ought to stay
()2.—Excuse me, can I smoke here? —No,
A. you mustn't B. you'd not better C. you can D. you'd better not to
()3 useful advice you gave us!
A. What a B. How a C. What D. How
()4. —Mum, must I finish the homework tonight?
—No, It is Saturday and you can finish later.
A. you must B. you'd not better
C. you mustn't D. you don't have to
()5. — will the next bus come, do you know? —In five minutes.

	A. How long	B. How soon	
	C. How many	D. How far	
()6. —You won't follow h	nis example, will you?	
	— I don't th	ink he is right.	
	A. No, I won't	B. Yes, I will C. No, I will	D. Yes, I won't
()7. —Subway Line 6 and	Line 2 will be built in our city in the coming	g four years.
	—Wow! ne	ews!	
	A. What exciting	B. How exciting	
	C. What an exciting	D. How an exciting	X
()8. —Must we collect the	waste paper and bottles now?	/X//
	You can	do it after class.	12/1/1
	A. Yes, you must.	B. No, you needn't.	
	C. Yes, you may.	D. No, you mustn't.	
)9. It's great! Your daughter	r's finished the homework,?	
	A. has she	B. isn't she C. hasn't she	D. does she
(-)10 the map and te	ll me where Shanghai is.	
K	A. Look at	B. Looks at C. Look around	D. Looking at

常考考点知识清单

考点一 陈述句

陈述句用来陈述事实或看法,一般用降调,句末用句点。 陈述句包括肯定句和否定句。

1. 肯定句

肯定句的基本结构为"主语+系动词+表语"或"主语+谓语+其他"。

My brother is a bus driver. 我的哥哥是一名公共汽车司机。

- 2. 否定句
- (1) 如果句子中含有 be 动词、助动词或情态动词,在它们之后直接加上 not 构成否定形式。 The girl isn't studying in the classroom. 那个女孩没有在教室里学习。
- (2) 如果句子的谓语动词是实义动词,其否定形式为:助动词 do/ does/ did+not+实义动词(原形)。 Mike doesn't have a brother. 迈克没有哥哥。
- (3) 除了 not 以外,还有一些可以构成否定式的否定词,如:no (=not any / not a), no one, never, nothing, no-body, neither, none。

I have never been abroad. 我从来没有去过国外。

- (4) 句子中含有 little, few, seldom, hardly 时,表示部分否定。 I can hardly sing English songs. 我几乎不会唱英文歌曲。
- (5) 当 all, both, each, everyone, everything, everywhere, always 等表示总括意义的词和 not 连用时,表示部分否定。

Not all the girls like bright colours. 不是所有的女孩都喜欢鲜艳的颜色。

注意:如果肯定句中含有 some, somebody, someone, something, somewhere, already, 变为否定句时,要分别改为 any, anybody, anyone, anything, anywhere, yet。

考点二 感叹句

感叹句是用来表达说话人对于某人、某物或某件事表示赞美、惊讶、喜悦、气愤或悲哀等语气的句子,这类句子有强烈的感情,句尾用感叹号。 感叹句通常由 how 或 what 引出。

- 1. 如果对句子中的名词或名词词组表示感叹,用 what 引导。
- (1) What+a/an+adj. +单数名词+主语+谓语(+其他成份)! 其中主语和谓语可以省略。

What an interesting book (it is)! 多有趣的一本书啊!

(2) What+adj. +名词复数/不可数名词+主语+谓语(+其他成份)! 其中主语和谓语可以省略

What beautiful flowers they are! 多漂亮的花啊!

- 2. 如果对句子中的形容词、副词或动词表示感叹,用 how 引导
- (1) How+adj. / adv. +主语+谓语(+其他成份)!

How hard the people are working! 这些人们工作多努力啊!

(2) How+主语+谓语!

How time flies! 时间过得真快啊!

考点三 疑问句

用来提出问题的句子叫疑问句,句末须用问号。 疑问句包括:一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、选择疑问句、 反意疑问句等。

1. 一般疑问句

能用 yes 或 no 回答的问句叫一般疑问句,读时用升调。 一般疑问句主要有以下三种形式:

(1) be+主语+其他?

Is your sister a nurse? 你姐姐是护士吗?

(2) 情态动词+主语+谓语+其他?

Can you lend me your bike? 你能借给我你的自行车吗?

(3) 助动词+主语+谓语+其他?

Have your friends ever visited your home? 你的朋友们曾经拜访过你家吗?

2. 特殊疑问句

特殊疑问句是指由特殊疑问词(组)引导的疑问句,句末多读降调,回答时要根据具体情况作出回答,不能用 yes 或 no。 特殊疑问句的构成:特殊疑问词(组)+一般疑问句?

(1) 疑问代词引导的特殊疑问句

常用的疑问代词有:what, who, which, whose, whom。

What is the girl doing? 这个女孩正在做什么?

(2) 疑问副词引导的特殊疑问句

常用的疑问副词有:when, where, why, how。

Where is your pen pal from? 你的笔友来自哪里?

(3) 疑问词引导的特殊疑问句

常用的疑问词组有:

A. what/ which/ whose+名词。

What colour is your new coat? 你的新外套是什么颜色的?

B. how + adj. / adv. 构成的疑问短语有:how many, how much, how old, how tall, how long, how often, how soon, how far。

How often do you do exercise? 你多久锻炼一次?

3. 选择疑问句

选择疑问句是提供两种或两种以上的情况,要求对方选择一种情况回答的问句,用 or 连接,or 前用升调,or 后用降调。

选择疑问句可用完整的句子或省略句回答所选情况,而不能用 yes 或 no 来回答。 选择疑问句的构成有两种情况:

- (1) 一般疑问句+or+被选择的部分+其他?
- —Do you like football or basketball? 你喜欢足球还是篮球?
- —I like basketball. 我喜欢篮球。
- (2) 特殊疑问句+A or B?
- —Which do you like better, apples or pears? 你更喜欢哪一类,苹果还是梨?
- —I like apples better. 我更喜欢苹果。

4. 反意疑问句

反意疑问句是附在陈述句之后,对陈述句所说的事实或观点提出疑问。 附加问句部分要与前面陈述句用逗号隔开,句末用问号。 附加部分的主语需用代词,并与前句主语一致,谓语动词在人称、数和时态上也要一致。 反意疑问句的用法如下:

(1) 主句为肯定陈述句时,附加问句部分用否定形式,且必须用缩写形式

The girl went to school late yesterday, didn't she? 那个女孩昨天上学迟到了,对不对?

(2) 主句为否定陈述句时,附加问句部分用肯定形式。

He didn't eat anything, did he? 他没有吃任何东西,对吗?

(3) 当陈述句部分主语是指示代词 that, this 或不定代词 something, everything, nothing 时,附加部分用 it。

Everything is ready, isn't it? 一切都准备好了,对不对?

(4) 当陈述部分主语是 everyone, everybody, no one, nobody, somebody, someone 时,附加部分可用 they,也可用 he。

Everybody likes the new teacher, don't they? 大家都喜欢这位新老师,对不对?

Someone knows the answer, doesn't he? 有人知道答案,对不对?

(5) 当陈述句部分是"there be"结构时,附加疑问句部分的主语用 there。

There is something wrong with your watch, isn't there? 你的手表有毛病了,对不对?

- (6) 当陈述部分含有否定前缀的词时,仍然把陈述部分看作肯定句,其反意疑问句仍用否定形式 It is impossible, isn't it? 这是不可能的,对不对?
- (7) 以 let's 开头的祈使句,附加问句应用 shall we;其他形式的祈使句,无论是肯定还是否定祈使句,附加问句都可用 will you。

Let's go home now, shall we? 现在咱们回家吧,好吗?

注意: 以 let us 开头的祈使句,附加问句应用 will you。

eg: Let us have a rest now, will you? 现在让我们休息一会儿,好吗?

(8) 当陈述部分的主句是 I think/ believe/ suppose 等结构时,问句部分则往往与 that 从句中的主语和谓语动词保持一致。

I think he is asleep, isn't he? 我认为他睡着了,是不是?

(9) 反意疑问句的回答

在回答反意疑问句时肯定用 yes,后跟肯定的陈述;否定用 no,后跟否定的陈述。 如果反意疑问句是 前否后肯的形式,回答中 yes 翻译成"不";no 翻译成"是的"。

- —Mary sings well, doesn't she? 玛丽唱得很好,是不是?
- —Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't. 不,她唱得很好。 / 是的,她唱得不好。

巧学妙记: 前肯后否是习惯,前否后肯也常见。 尾句 not 若出现,必须缩写是习惯。 还有一点需注意,短语代词作主语。回答反意疑问句,答语含义是依据。肯定陈述用 yes,否定陈述用 no 替。

考点四 祈使句

祈使句表达说话人对对方的叮嘱、劝告、希望、禁止、请求或命令等。 祈使句一般以动词原形开头,无时态和数的变化,句末用句点或感叹号,读时用降调,在祈使句的句首或句末加上 please,以使语气更加委婉客气。 祈使句有肯定和否定两种形式。

- 1. 肯定祈使句
- (1) 动词原形+其他。

Open the door, please. 请打开门。

(2) Let's+动词原形+其他。

Let's go to the park this Sunday. 这个星期天咱们去公园吧。

2. 否定祈使句

(1) Don't+动词原形+其他。 Don't play football on the road! 不要在马路上踢足球! (2) Let sb. not+动词原形+其他。 Let's not make so much noise here. 咱们不要在这大声吵闹。 (3) Never+动词原形+其他。 Never be late for school. 上学绝不可迟到。 3. 祈使句的回答 因为祈使句通常表示将来要发生的动作,所以回答祈使句时,一般用 will 或 won't。 —Don't forget to do your homework. 不要忘记做你的作业。 —I won't. 我不会忘记的。 巩固训练 (夯实基础) 单项选择)1. —Mum had nothing for supper tonight, ? —No. She didn't feel like anything. B. hadn't she; to eat A. had she; eating D. didn't she; to eat C. did she; eating)2. — did Tom say when you told him the news? -Nothing. A. How C. Which B. What D. Why)3. — the little boy looks! —Yes. He can't find his mum. B. What sad C. What sadly A. How sad D. How sadly)4. —Let's go boating, B. won't you C. shall we D. will we A. will you)5. —Have you read today's morning paper? —Not . What's the latest news about hand-foot-and-mouth disease? B. yet C. ever D. just A. only)6. — make this mistake again, Jack. — Sorry. I D. Don't; will A. Don't; won't B. Don't be; won't C. Don't be; don't)7. —Did you go fishing swimming yesterday? —Neither. I went shopping. A. and B. or C. but D. so do you go to school, by bike or by bus? —By bike. A. What B. When C. How D. Why 9. —There are always many volunteers in Olympic Games, —Yes. Many hands make light work.

(00)

B. are there

B. isn't it; Yes

A. aren't there

A. isn't there; No

)10. —There is enough fruit for us,

D. isn't it; No

D. are they

. We need to get some.

C. aren't they

C. is there; No

二、用所给单词的正确形式填空 1. — (how a) fast China is developing! —Yes, we are so lucky to live in such a great country. 2. —Mum, can I play computer games this evening? — (finish) your homework first, and then we'll talk about it. 3. He seldom came here, ____ (does) he? 4. Don't forget to give Polly some food and change her water, (would) you? 5. (does) she sleep well last night? 6. _____(What) clever dog Lucky is! It can understand Mr Smith's orders. 7. — (often) do you brush your teeth? —Twice or more a day. (be) late for school. 8. I always hate 9. Be careful! (Do) go too high. 10. Which do you like (well), skating or skiing? 专题九 学前自测)1. —It's a bit cold today. Would you mind closing the window? — _____. A. Never mind B. Yes, of course C. Of course not D. No, thanks)2. —We will study in different schools next term. Enjoy your time in the new school. A. I'll take your advice. B. The same to you. C. Congratulations! D. Me too. 3. —Good luck and have a nice weekend. ___ . Bye. A. The same as you B. You have it too C. You are too D. The same to you)4. —It's said that shopping online is safe. — . You'd better be careful. (2018) A. That depends B. I agree C. I think so D. No problem)5. —Hello! May I speak to John, please? —Yes. C. Here John is A. I'm John speaking B. This is John speaking D. Here I am — You can make it!)6. —It will be my turn. I feel a little nervous. B. Take it easy C. Look out A. Congratulations D. Have a good time

)7. —Would you mind my using your pen? (2017)

	<u> </u>	I don't need to use it	at the moment.	•
	A. Sounds great	B. I'm not sure	C. Yes, please	D. Of course not
()8. —I put 1	my coat here? —	Sorry, you	
	A. Must; mustn't	B. Do; don't	C. Can't; needn't	D. May; can't
()9. —You look smart to	oday! —	*	
	A. Thank you.	B. Not good.	C. That's OK.	D. What a shame!
()10. —Jackie, I'm going	on business. Please lo	ook after yourself.	
	—, Dad.	I will.		
	A. I hope to	B. I'd love to	C. Don't worry	D. Don't mention i

常考考点知识清单

学习语言的最终目的是交际。 在近几年的中考试题中,情景交际题目所占的比例越来越大。 目前,情景交际既通过最新的听说合一的考查方式进行,还通过笔试进行,即通过笔试来测试考生的语言综合运用能力。

考点一 打电话方面的交际用语

1. 请给某人/ 某单位打电话。

Would/ Could/ Can you ring up...? 请你给......打电话好吗? 除了用 ring up 外,还可用 call, call up, telephone 等,意思相同。

2. 电话拨不通时常说:

The line is busy. I can't get through. 电话占线,我打不通。 / I'll try again later. 我过一会儿再打。 如果信号不好可以说 Sorry, I can't hear you.

3. 电话拨通后相互打招呼:

Hello, (Your name or telephone number)你好,(并通报本人的姓名或单位名称或电话号码) Hello, is that...speaking? 你是.....吗?/Who is (that) speaking/calling(,please)? 你是谁? 应答时常说:

Yes, (this is)...speaking. 是的,我是.....。/Yes, it's...here. 我是......。

4. 打电话请对方找人或留言:

Is...in/ at home? 某某在家吗? / Can/ May/ Could I speak to..., please? 请.....接电话好吗? / Will/ Would you give a message to..., please? 请给......捎个口信好吗? / Would you tell him my telephone number, please? 请你把我的电话号码告诉他好吗? / Can/ Could you ask...to ring me back, please? 请叫.....给我回个电话好吗?

应答时常说:

Hold on/ Wait a minute/ One moment, please. 请等一等。/ I'm sorry...is not in/ at home now. 对不起,.....现在不在。 / Can I take a message? 我能给你捎口信好吗? / I'll ask him to call you back. 我叫他给你回电话。

考点二 劝告和建议方面的交际用语

- 1. You'd better (not)do sth. 你最好(不)干.....。/ You should do sth. 你应该干.....。/ You need (to) do sth. 你需要干.....。
- 2. Why don't you do sth.? 为什么不……?/Why not do sth.? 为什么不……? 这是以反问的方式提出 劝告或建议,含有建议对方去干某事的意思,而不是询问对方为何不去干某事的原因。
- 3. What/ How about+名词或动名词…?这种句型表达随便的建议,有征求对方意见的意思,多数情况下是建议和对方一起做某事。
- 4. "Shall we…?"这种句型用于建议对方与自己一起做什么,是一种普通的表示建议的方法。 它和 "Let's…, shall we?"句型可以互换,在回答时,如果赞成这个建议,常用"Yes, let's."或 "OK, let's."
- 5. 用 suggest 作谓语的陈述句。

这种句子用于表达比较正式的建议,在会议上和讨论中使用较多,也常用于书面形式,后面常跟名词、动名词或 that 从句作宾语。 注意跟从句时,从句中动词用动词原形:should+动词原形。

6. 用 Let's 开头的祈使句。

这是最普通的表达建议的方法,建议对方和自己一起做什么,let's 后接动词原形。 若句尾加上"shall we?","OK?"等用于征求对方意见的词语,能使语气变得委婉得多。

注意:对对方的建议表示同意时常用的答语为:

Great! 太好了! That's a good idea. 真是个好主意。

对对方的建议表示不同意,或根本不能满足对方的要求而表示歉意时的常用答语为:I'm afraid that... 我担心.....;我恐怕......。 / I'm afraid not. 恐拍不行。

- 7. 用 should, ought to 等情态动词来表示"劝告"。
- 8. 用动词 advise,名词 advice 表示劝告。

考点三 问候与应答方面的交际用语

1. 一般打招呼用语,答语通常是重复对方的话。

Hello! 你好! Hi! 嗨! Good morning(afternoon, evening). 早上(下午、晚上)好。

2. 您好! 初次见面打招呼的用语 How do you do? / Glad to meet you.

答语也是 How do you do? / Glad to meet you.

- 3. 对有一段时候没有见面的熟人可选用这些句型:How are you?/How have you been? 你(您)好吗? 答语往往是:"Fine, thank you. And you?"
- 4. 向认识但不常见面的人打招呼,可选用这些表达法。How's everything with you? / How is everything going? / How are you getting on? / What's up? 近来怎么样?

答语可用: Pretty well. / Very well. Everything is OK. (一切顺利) Not too bad. 还好。

5. 对于不认识想要叫他(她)停下来时,可选用这些说法:Hey, sir(madam). 喂,先生(小姐) / Just a moment, sir(madam). 等一下,先生(小姐)。

注意: 此时不能说:"Hey! You!"

考点四 感谢与应答方面的交际用语

1. Thank you. / Thanks(a lot). 谢谢! / Thank you so/ very much. 非常感谢! / I'm really grateful to you 非常感谢你!

That's very kind of you. 你心眼儿真好。 / You're kind! 你真好。

- 2. 如果别人想为你办事,可你觉得不必麻烦他或者别人替你办事没有办成但你还要感谢他,这时你可以说:Thank you just the same. 同样感谢你的好意。 / Thank you all the same. 同样得感谢你。
- 3. 在回答别人的感谢时,常说:

You're welcome. 没关系。 / Not at all. 没事儿。 / Don't mention it

考点五 祝愿、祝贺及应答方面的交际用语

1. 当某人取得成功时

I have passed the examination! 我已经通过考试了。

Congratulations(to you)祝贺你!

2. 当某人外出旅行时

Good luck with your trip! 祝您们旅途平安! Have a good trip/ journey. =I wish you a good trip/ journey.
祝你旅途愉快。祝你一路顺风。/ Good trip to you. / Nice journey to you. 祝你旅途愉快。 Have a nice pleasant/ wonderful time. =I wish you a nice/ pleasant/ wonderful time.
祝你玩得愉快。
祝你玩得愉快。

- 3. 当某人生日时
- —Happy birthday to you! 生日快乐!—Thank you! 谢谢!
- 4. 当某人即将做某事时
- —I will take the exams tomorrow. 我明天将参加考试。
- —Good luck (to you)! (I wish you success!)祝您顺利! (祝您成功!)

注意:上述几点中祝愿(贺)的回答可用: Thanks/ Thank you / Thanks a lot. 或 It's kind of you to say so. 谢谢。 / 多谢。 / 谢谢您。 / 谢谢你这么说。

- 5. 在公共节日里
- —Happy New Year(to you)! 新年快乐! / Merry Christmas!
- —Thanks. The same to you! (Happy New Year to you, too!)谢谢! 您也一样! (也祝您新年快乐!)

考点六 请求允许和应答方面的交际用语

1. Can I/ Could I/ May I...? 我可不可以.....?

这个是请求对方允许自己做某事的最普通的交际用语,其中 Could I...? 语气最婉转;May I...? 常用在比较正式的场合;Can I...? 用得最广泛。

对于所提出的请求表示允许或同意时,可说:Yes. / Sure. / Certainly. 当然可以。 Of course, you may. 当然可以。Yes, do please. 请吧。 Go ahead, please. 请吧。 That's OK. / All right. 好的。

对于所提出的请求表示不允许或不同意时,可说:No, pleased don't. 请不要。 I'm sorry you can't. 对不起,你不可以......。 I'm sorry, but...对不起,但是...。 You'd better not...你最好别......。

2. Do you mind if I do...? 如果我干某事,你反对/ 介意吗?"或"我干某事,好吗?"

这是用来表示"请求许可"的交际用语。 句中的 mind 作"介意"、"反对"解。

注意:当我们用"Do you mind if..."时,if 从句中的谓语动词一般用现在时;当我们用"Would you mind if..."时,if 从句中的谓语动词一般用过去时,这时语气更加婉转。

应答时,如果表示"允许/不介意",常说:No, I don't mind. 我不介意/我允许。 Certainly not / Of course not. 当然不介意。 No, go ahead. 不介意,你干吧。 / Not at all. 一点也不介意。

如果表示"不允许/ 介意"时,常说:I'm sorry you can't...很抱歉,你不能.....。/ I'm afraid...恐怕.....。/ I'm afraid it's not allowed. 恐怕这是不允许的。

3. I wonder if I could/can...? 我想知道我能否.....?

这也是用来表示"请求许可"的交际用语。句中的 wonder 作"想知道"解,后面常跟 if 从句,用以委婉地提出请求。

应答时,如果允许,常说:Sure, go ahead. / Yes, please do. 可以,请吧。 Yes. / Of course. / Certainly. 当然可以。

如果不允许,可以说:I'm sorry, but...对不起,.....。 / I'm afraid not. 恐怕不行。 / No, please don't. 请不要。 / You'd better not...你最好别.....。

考点七 请求与应答方面的交际用语

1. 用 may(can, could)来表达。

表示同意请求的应答:Yes, you may(can). 是的。/ Certainly. (=Of course. / Sure.)当然可以。/ Yes, do please.好的,请吧。

注意:上述回答中 can 不能换成 could 因为 could 在一般疑问句中表示委婉的请求,而在肯定句中,则无此功能。

表示不同意请求的应答:No, you mustn't. 不可以。 / No, you can't. 不能。 No, you'd better not. 你最好不这样。 / Please don't. 请不要这样。 / Sorry, I'm afraid not. 对不起,恐怕不能。

2. 用 shall 来表达

表示同意的请求应答:Yes, I'd like to. 好的,我愿意。 / All right. / OK. 好的。 / (That's a)Good idea. 好主意。 /Yes, Let's...好的,让我们走吧。

表示不同意请求的应答:Please don't. 请不要这样。 / I don't think so. 我认为不要这样。 / I'm afraid not. 恐怕不能。

3. 用 Would(Will)you please...? / Would you like...? 来表达。

表示同意请求的应答:Yes, I'd like to. / Yes, I'd love to. / Yes, I'll be glad to. 是的,我愿意。 / With pleasure. 十分愿意。

注意: 上述回答中介词 to 均不能省略。

表示不同意请求的应答:I'd like (love) to, but I'm busy. 我很想,但我很忙。 / I'm sorry, but I'm busy. 对不起,我很忙。 / I'm afraid not. 恐怕不能。 / I'd really like to, but I have no time. 我的确很愿意,可我没时间。

4. 用 please 来表达。

表示同意请求的应答:OK. / All right. 好的。/ Of course. / Sure. / Certainly.)当然可以。/ With pleasure. 十分愿意。

表示不同意请求的应答:I'm sorry, but I'm busy. 对不起,我很忙。 / I'm afraid not. 恐怕不行。

考点八 邀请与应答方面的交际用语

1. 用一般疑问句形式

Will / Would / Can / Could you come to...? 是被邀请人接受的可能性较大。 表示"请您来......好吗?" 例如:

Will you come to take part in my party? 你来参加我的聚会好吗?

Would you like +名词(代词) / 不定式/ sb. +不定式? 此句型表示"您愿意……? 或你是否愿意……?", 此时邀请人不知对方是否接受邀请,是商量、询问及试探性的邀请、请求或表示个人的想法、看法。例如:

- —Would you like to go there with him? 你愿意与他一道去那儿吗?
- —Yes, I'd like(love) to 好的,我愿意。 (类似肯定表达法:Yes, I'd be happy to. 好的,我很乐意。 / Yes, it's very kind / nice of you to invite me. 好的,谢谢您邀请我。 / Yes, it's very kind of you. 真是太好了,谢谢。)
- 2. 用陈述句形式

I like sb. to do sth. / I'd like you to come to...这是向某人发出邀请的常见句式。 表示"希望(想叫)某人做某事",常与 would 连用,是一种客气的邀请。 例如:

- —I'd like to invite you to see a film with me. 我想请你和我一起去看电影。
- —I'd like(love) to, but I'm very busy. 我很想,但我很忙。 (类似委婉拒绝表达法:I'd love to...I'm afraid...我想去,恐怕......。 / Thank you for inviting me, but...谢谢你的邀请,但是....../ It's very kind of you to invite me, but I'm busy. 谢谢你邀请我,但我很忙。)

考点九 问路及应答方面的交际用语

- 1. 问路时,首先说"Excuse me."意思是"请原谅"、"请问"、"劳驾",表示因为打扰而道歉,然后再问路, 应答时可根据实际情况回答。
- 2. 常用的有以下几种表达:

Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to...? 劳驾,请告诉我去.....(地方)怎么走? / Excuse me. How can I get to...? 劳驾,怎样去.....(地方)? / Excuse me, please, where is...? 劳驾,请问去.....的路怎么走? / How far is it from here? 它离这里多远?

回答常常有:It's about...metres from here. 它离这里大约......米远。 / It's about...yards/ meters down this street. /Go straight ahead till you see...沿着这条街走约......米就到了。 / Go straight ahead till you see...照直走到.....(地方)为止。 / Go down/ along this street. 沿着这条街走下去。 / Take this street/ road. 走这条街/ 大路。 / Go through the gate and you'll find the entrance to...穿过大门,你就会看到......的入口处。 / Go down/ along this street till you get to...沿着这条街走到......(地方)为止。 / Turn right/ left at the first/ second crossing. 在第一/ 二个十字路口向右/ 左转。 / You'd better take a taxi/ No. 5 Bus...你最好坐出租车/ 乘 5 路公共汽车。

考点十 就餐方面的交际用语

- 1. 就餐时,当主人询问客人想吃/喝点什么时,主人常说:Would you like sth. (to eat / to drink)? 你想吃/喝点……吗? / What would you like (to have)? 你想要吃点什么? / Would you like some more...? 你还要点……吗? / How about (some more)...? (再)来点……怎么样?
- 2. 就餐时,当主人主动请客人吃/喝点东西时,主人常说:Help yourself to...? 你吃/喝点......吧。/Let me give you...? 让我给你拿点......吧。/Make yourself at home. 请随便吃,不要客气。
- 3. 当客人表示愿意或同意吃/喝点东西时,常回答:Yes, please. 好的。 / I'd like...我想来点......。 Well, just a lit-tle, please. 好的,请来一点儿。
- 4. 当客人表示不想吃/喝东西或表示已经吃饱/喝好了时,常回答:No, thanks. 谢谢,不要了。/ Thank you, I've had enough. 谢谢,我已经吃/喝够了。/ I'm full, thank you. 谢谢,我吃饱了。

巩固训练(夯实基础)

41	毕 火				
)1. —Excuse me, I can't find	d my seat. Could you	nelp me, sir? (2015)	•	
	— May I see	your ticket, please?	CONT. KO		
	A. It doesn't matter	B. Great	C. I can't	D. Sure	
()2. —Would you like to hav	e dinner with me, Jan	e?		
	— But I'm bu	sy revising for my En	glish exam.		
	A. Don't mention it	B. I'd love to	C. That's all right	D. My pleasure	
()3. —Hello, may I speak to	Lily, please? —			

	A. Yes, he is	3. Good idea C. Speaking	D. Fine
()4. —You'd better not eat too muc	ch chocolate. It's bad for your health.	<u> </u>
	A. It's a joke	B. You're welcome	/ /
	C. It doesn't matter	D. Thanks for your advice	~_XX
()5. —I'm going to have a trip to So		_ ×4-
(I agree C. Thank you	D. Good luck
()6. —Would you mind opening th		, (/X _ () \
(\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \	You'd better not C. I have no idea	D. It's up to you
()7. —My iPad is broken. Could I		B. It's up to you
(but you must ret	•	X/\///
	4-Y'	No problem C. You can't	D. You may not
()8.— ? —Yes, I want to 1	•	D. Tou may not
(A. May I help you	•	Ma.
	C. How much is it	B. May I know you	X
		D. How do you do	
)9. —Excuse me, how can I get to		
	A. Turn left at the second crossin	> 11111000	
	C. I don't think so	D. You're welcome	
)10. —May I talk to Lucy, please?		
	A. You can go.	B. Can I take a message for	you?
	C. Hold on, please.	D. Who are you?	
		NO NO	
~ 4			-72
	补充练习】 reeting		
G	1.—Hello, Joan.	?	
	A. Hi Kate. Glad to see	you. B. Hello	X//>.0
	C. Good morning	D. How do you do	715 AO
	2. —Hi, haven't seen you for a You look well to		WAT O
,	A. Great B. Thanks	C. Oh, no D. Not at a	all
1	3. —How are you! Jane?		
	A. How are you, Mary?	B. Fine, thanks, and you?	
1	C. All is right. 4. —How do you do?	D. That's good.	
	—	(X)\(\/\	>
()	A. Very well, thank you.	B. Why, yes. I'm fine.D. What about you?	
J	C. How do you do? 5. —How's everything with you		
	A. Fine, thanks	D. It's all might	
	C. Thank very much	B. It's all right D. I'm very well	
	6. —How's your work going?		
		70,	
		K V	
		511	
	VII VO		
	WATOU		

Α.	Not too well, I'm afraid.				
В.	Quite good. What about you?	.X/.\	2.7//		
C.	Fine, how are you, then?				
D	Well, thanks a lot.				
	—Did you have a good summ	er holiday?			
/ \	Vas thanks Vata?	i nonday:	/\alpha_1		
	—Yes, thanks Kate?				
	—She's OK, thanks.	D 11 '			
	what's is	B. How is			
	What's wrong	D. and			
8,	—Glad to meet you again. Ho	v are you?			
	—I'm just(老样子)				
Α.	my old self	B. old mysel	f		A 444
		D. as old mys			
	—It's nice to see you in New Y	ork How's you	ur family?		
21				AX	/. \? <i>\</i> ///
	— My wife asked me t				
Α.	It's very well	B. They are f		<i>\</i>	$\mathcal{M}(\mathcal{M}_{\mathcal{M}})$
	That's all right	D. They are g	good		
10.	—How's the young man?				. ///
1.4	× _1.				
A.	He's twenty	B. He's a doo	ctor	-X	
	He's much better	D. He's David	d X		
	. —How on with yo				
,,,,,,	—Not bad.	in new job thest	o days.		
Λ	do you get	B. did you ge			
				9)	
	are you getting	D. have you a			
12	—Hello, Kate! Fancy meetin		rking again,	are you?	
J.	—Yes,, if I want to pass	the exams.			
_ ^					
	I've got to	B. no other w			
C.	I must do	B. no other w D. I have on y	way		
C. 13、	I must do In the evening you meet you	B. no other w D. I have on y	way	wards the reata	urant, you
C.	I must do In the evening you meet you	B. no other w D. I have on y	way	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13 should s	I must do In the evening you meet you	B. no other w D. I have on y	way	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13 should s A.	I must do In the evening you meet you say Good evening.	B. no other w D. I have on y	way	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13 should s A. B.	I must do In the evening you meet you say Good evening. Good night.	B. no other w D. I have on y foreign teacher	way	vards the reata	urant, you
C. 13 should s A. B. C.	I must do In the evening you meet you say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup	B. no other w D. I have on y foreign teacher	way	vards the reata	urant, you
C. 13 should s A. B. C. D.	I must do In the evening you meet you say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner.	B. no other w D. I have on y foreign teacher	way	vards the reata	urant, you
C. 13 should s A. B. C. D. Introdu	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction	B. no other w D. I have on foreign teacher	way	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13 should s A. B. C. D. Introdu	I must do In the evening you meet you say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner.	B. no other w D. I have on foreign teacher	way	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13 should s A. B. C. D. Introdu	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J —	B. no other w. D. I have on foreign teacher per?	way r walking tov	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13s should s A. B. C. D. Introdu	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you.	B. no other w D. I have on y foreign teacher per? ohn. B. How are y	way r walking tov ou?	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13s should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1. A. C.	I must do In the evening you meet you say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John.	B. no other w D. I have on y foreign teacher per? ohn. B. How are y D. Are you T	way r walking tov ou?	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13s should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1. A. C.	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you.	B. no other w D. I have on y foreign teacher per? ohn. B. How are y D. Are you T	way r walking tov ou?	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13 should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1 . A. C. 2 .	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John. —Let me introduce myself. I'r	B. no other w D. I have on y foreign teacher per? Ohn. B. How are y D. Are you T n Albert.	way r walking tov ou? om?	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13 should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1. A. C. 2.	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John. —Let me introduce myself. I'r — With a pleasure	B. no other w D. I have on y foreign teacher per? Ohn. B. How are y D. Are you T n Albert. B. It's my ple	way r walking tov ou? om? asure	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13 should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1 A. C. 2 A. C.	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John. —Let me introduce myself. I'r — With a pleasure I'm very pleased	B. no other w D. I have on y foreign teacher per? bhn. B. How are y D. Are you T n Albert. B. It's my ple D. Pleased to	way r walking tov ou? om? asure meet you	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13 should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1 A. C. 2 A. C.	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John. —Let me introduce myself. I'r — With a pleasure	B. no other w D. I have on y foreign teacher per? bhn. B. How are y D. Are you T n Albert. B. It's my ple D. Pleased to	way r walking tov ou? om? asure meet you	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13s should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1. A. C. 2. A. C.	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John. —Let me introduce myself. I'r — With a pleasure I'm very pleased When you are introduced to	B. no other w D. I have on y foreign teacher per? bhn. B. How are y D. Are you T n Albert. B. It's my ple D. Pleased to	ou? om? asure meet you should say	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13\ should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1\ A. C. 2\ A. C.	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John. —Let me introduce myself. I'r — With a pleasure I'm very pleased 3、When you are introduced to I'm getting on well	B. no other w D. I have on y foreign teacher per? ohn. B. How are y D. Are you T n Albert. B. It's my ple D. Pleased to o someone, you B. I love you	ou? om? asure meet you should say very much	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13\ should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1\ A. C. 2\ A. C.	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John. —Let me introduce myself. I'r — With a pleasure I'm very pleased 3、When you are introduced to I'm getting on well Fine, thank you.	B. no other w D. I have on y foreign teacher per? ohn. B. How are y D. Are you T n Albert. B. It's my ple D. Pleased to o someone, you B. I love you D. How do you	ou? ou? om? asure meet you should say very much ou do?	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13\ should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1\ A. C. 2\ A. C.	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John. —Let me introduce myself. I'r — With a pleasure I'm very pleased 3、When you are introduced to I'm getting on well	B. no other w D. I have on y foreign teacher per? ohn. B. How are y D. Are you T n Albert. B. It's my ple D. Pleased to o someone, you B. I love you D. How do you	ou? ou? om? asure meet you should say very much ou do?	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13 should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1. A. C. 2. A. C. 4.	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John. —Let me introduce myself. I'n — With a pleasure I'm very pleased 3、When you are introduced to I'm getting on well Fine, thank you. —Have you met my girl friend	B. no other w D. I have on y foreign teacher per? Ohn. B. How are y D. Are you T n Albert. B. It's my ple D. Pleased to someone, you B. I love you D. How do you J. Susan? Susan	way r walking tov ou? om? asure meet you should say very much ou do? t, this is Li.	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13s should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1. A. C. 2. A. C. 4. A.	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John. —Let me introduce myself. I'r — With a pleasure I'm very pleased 3、When you are introduced to I'm getting on well Fine, thank you. —Have you met my girl friend — Glad to meet you.	B. no other w D. I have on office ign teacher per? The big is a second of the content of the co	way r walking tov ou? om? asure meet you should say very much ou do? a, this is Li.	wards the reata	urant, you
C. 13s should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1. A. C. 2. A. C. 4. A. C.	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J —Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John. —Let me introduce myself. I'r ———. With a pleasure I'm very pleased When you are introduced to I'm getting on well Fine, thank you. —Have you met my girl friend —Glad to meet you. How are you?	B. no other w D. I have on off foreign teacher per? Ohn. B. How are y D. Are you To Albert. B. It's my ple D. Pleased to osomeone, you B. I love you D. How do you J. Susan? Susan B. Thank you D. Welcome	way r walking tov ou? om? asure meet you should say very much ou do? this is Li. home.		urant, you
C. 13s should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1. A. C. 2. A. C. 4. A. C.	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John. —Let me introduce myself. I'n — With a pleasure I'm very pleased When you are introduced to I'm getting on well Fine, thank you. —Have you met my girl friend — Glad to meet you. How are you? —Please allow me to introudu	B. no other w D. I have on off foreign teacher per? Ohn. B. How are y D. Are you To Albert. B. It's my ple D. Pleased to osomeone, you B. I love you D. How do you J. Susan? Susan B. Thank you D. Welcome	way r walking tov ou? om? asure meet you should say very much ou do? this is Li. home.		urant, you
C. 13 should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1. A. C. 2. A. C. 4. C. 5.	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John. —Let me introduce myself. I'n — With a pleasure I'm very pleased 3、When you are introduced to I'm getting on well Fine, thank you. —Have you met my girl friend — Glad to meet you. How are you? —Please allow me to introudu — (久仰大名)	B. no other w D. I have on off foreign teacher per? Ohn. B. How are y D. Are you To Albert. B. It's my ple D. Pleased to osomeone, you B. I love you D. How do you J. Susan? Susan B. Thank you D. Welcome	way r walking tov ou? om? asure meet you should say very much ou do? this is Li. home.		urant, you
C. 13 should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1 A. C. 2 A. C. 4 A. C. 5 A.	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John. —Let me introduce myself. I'n — With a pleasure I'm very pleased 3、When you are introduced to I'm getting on well Fine, thank you. —Have you met my girl friend — Glad to meet you. How are you? —Please allow me to introudu — (久仰大名) I haven't seen you before.	B. no other w D. I have on off foreign teacher per? Ohn. B. How are y D. Are you To Albert. B. It's my ple D. Pleased to osomeone, you B. I love you D. How do you J. Susan? Susan B. Thank you D. Welcome	way r walking tov ou? om? asure meet you should say very much ou do? this is Li. home.		urant, you
C. 13 should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1 A. C. 2 A. C. 4 A. C. 5 A. B.	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John. —Let me introduce myself. I'n — With a pleasure I'm very pleased 3、When you are introduced to I'm getting on well Fine, thank you. —Have you met my girl friend — Glad to meet you. How are you? —Please allow me to introudu —(久仰大名) I haven't seen you before. Haven't we met before?	B. no other w D. I have on off foreign teacher per? Ohn. B. How are y D. Are you To Albert. B. It's my ple D. Pleased to osomeone, you B. I love you D. How do you J. Susan? Susan B. Thank you D. Welcome ce Mr. Smith, do	way r walking tov ou? om? asure meet you should say very much ou do? this is Li. home.		urant, you
C. 13 should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1. A. C. 2. A. C. 4. A. C. 5. A. B. C. 5.	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John. —Let me introduce myself. I'r — With a pleasure I'm very pleased 3、When you are introduced to I'm getting on well Fine, thank you. —Have you met my girl friend — Glad to meet you. How are you? —Please allow me to introudu — (久仰大名) I haven't seen you before. Haven't we met before? I've heard so much about you.	B. no other w D. I have on off foreign teacher per? Ohn. B. How are y D. Are you To Albert. B. It's my ple D. Pleased to osomeone, you B. I love you D. How do you J. Susan? Susan B. Thank you D. Welcome ce Mr. Smith, do	way r walking tov ou? om? asure meet you should say very much ou do? this is Li. home.		urant, you
C. 13 should s A. B. C. D. Introdu 1. A. C. 2. A. C. 4. A. C. 5. A. B. C. 5.	I must do In the evening you meet your say Good evening. Good night. Hello. Have you had your sup Hi! Going to dinner. Iction —Hi, Tom, this is my friend J — Nice to meet you. Hi, Tom, I'm John. —Let me introduce myself. I'n — With a pleasure I'm very pleased 3、When you are introduced to I'm getting on well Fine, thank you. —Have you met my girl friend — Glad to meet you. How are you? —Please allow me to introudu —(久仰大名) I haven't seen you before. Haven't we met before?	B. no other w D. I have on off foreign teacher per? Ohn. B. How are y D. Are you To Albert. B. It's my ple D. Pleased to osomeone, you B. I love you D. How do you J. Susan? Susan B. Thank you D. Welcome ce Mr. Smith, do	way r walking tov ou? om? asure meet you should say very much ou do? this is Li. home.		urant, you

	you, yourself know	В.	you, you know
	he, us know	D.	he, himself know
	Let's give him a	_	
	warm welcome		warming welcome
	warmly welcome	D.	warm welcoming
Farewe		. 1	
1,	—It's five o'clock already, I m	ust t	be going.
	—Well, come again yo		
Α.	B. whenever		
	2. —Oh, God, it's late. I've g		o go.
	— Hope to see them so		
	Give your parents my greeting		
В.	Remember me to your parents		~
C.	Show my greetings to your pa	rents	S
	Say hello to your parents		
31	—It's time I was going, I'm afr	aia.	
٨٩	Good evening	P	Good night
	Bey—bey	D.	All the best
	—Well, I'd better let you get o		
////\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\	— Well, I'd better let you get o	11 00 1	till your work.
Α.	I've wasted a lot of your time		re n
	Thank you for a lovely afterno	oon	ニジント
	You must be tired	. 011	(111, 1) - (0)
	I'm sorry to trouble you		
	—I'm flying home on Sunday	mor	ning.
	—I wish you		X/(), (), \
Α.			a good trip
	good lucky	D.	a happy journey travel
6、	—I think I must go now. See y	ou 1	ater.
		D	
	You can go		See you later
			So long
/ \	—I'm glad to have met you. D	Top i	by sometime.
Α	Thank you	R	Give me a call
C.			Take care
	—It's very kind of you to come		
Α.	It's my pleasure	В.	much better
С.	Don't say it		No problem
9、	—I'm going camping this weel	kend	L ·
1	*	_	-//V
	Can you fish?		Have a good time
	No, I'm too busy		Don't give up now
10.	—I'll go to Beijing this week	end.	
A	Voy and hydray	D	The heat of healt
A.	You are lucky Thank you		The best of luck Good—bye
Askin	g and Directing the Way	υ.	Good—bye
1	Excuse me, can you tell me	whe	ere the nearest bus stop is?
	—I'm sorry, I have no idea. I	110	
Α.	don't know	В.	am a strager here
	am new		just come
2,	— will it take me to wa		
	— About ten minutes.	K	
	How far B. How long		C. How much D. What far
3、	—Excuse me, is there a cinem	a arc	ound here?

	—Yes, please go, the	en tu	trn right the first crossing. along, of D. forward, to
A.	before, on B. ahead, at	C.	along, of D. forward, to
4、	—Excuse me_officer_L can't_ti	ınd t	he subway entrance
	—See those glass doors? Go i	n an	d you will see it on your right.
Δ	Can you help me?	R	Where is it?
C	Can you help me? Show me the way?	D.	Vou are very helpful
5	Is your sahaal for from hard	ນ. າ	Tod are very helpful
٦,	—Is your school far from here —Not very far,	٠,4	
	—Not very far,		
	it is about ten minutes' walk		
В.	it nees to walk ten minutes		
С.	you need walking ten minutes		
D.	it is about ten—minutes walk		
6,	—Could you tell me where the	trai	n station is?
	—		
A.	It's over there	В.	It's on the third floor Yes, it's there
C.	No, I know little Excuse me, is this Mr. Brow	D.	Yes, it's there
7、	—Excuse me, is this Mr. Brow	/n's o	office?
	—I'm sorry, but Mr. Brown		works here
Δ	not now B. no more	\overline{C}	not still D no longer
2	Evence me can you tell me	the v	way to the Sleeping Beauty Castle?
	Yes,	uic	way to the Steeping Beauty Castle.
			Z'K
A.	Go down this road		-!/^
В.	Go ahead till you see the entra	ance	
	It's not far from here		-////
	You can walk there		
Asking	g for Time and Date		7.7
1.	<u> </u>		XXX
	—It's the third of May?		7- Y' (O)
A.	What day is it	В.	What's the date
С.	What's the time	D.	What's the clock
2,	— <u> </u>		
	—Im sorry, my watch has sto	ppe	
Α.	When is it	B.	How much is it
	What is the time	D.	What's the clock
3.	—Is your watch right?		what's the crock
٥,	—I think so. I set it _ the rad	inth	is morning
٨	to B. of	10 ti	by D. through
A.	—What day is it today?	, С.	by D. tillough
4、	— what day is it today?		
		ъ	C + 1
Α.	July 27		Saturday
	the 27 of July		Women's Day
5,	—How long has this bookshop	bee	en in business?
	<u> </u>		-///
Α.	After B. In	C.	From D. Since
6.	—When are you off?		
	at 21:24.		
	I hope you will have a good	l flig	ght.
A.	My bus leaves		My plane takes off
C.	My train goes		My coach goes
7.	— will the work be rea		Wy couch goes
	— two months.	ay.	DKW VY
٨		D	How often For
	How long, After		How often, For
	How soon, In	υ.	How much, During
8,	—Is your watch correct?	.,=	X
	—Yes, my watch		
	runs well	B	keeps good time
	keeps right about Health		never stops

	1,	How's your brother these daHe hasn't been to well.	ys?	Y. \\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\
		What's the matter?		VXX,///>
	Δ	It's bad.	R	I'm sorry to here that.
		Very badly.		Why?
	2.	—I haven't seen Bob lately		W113:
	21	I haven't seen Bob lately.As a matter of fact, he is ill		_
		Where is he?		Why?
		How is he?	D.	What does he do?
		—You sound as if you've got a	a col	d
	٠,	—	. 001	·
		—Get a good rest.)	
	Α.	Yes, as if	B.	I've been over—working
	C.	I don't think so		I hope not
		—I'm afraid I've got a bad cold		F
		7.11.		
	A.	Never mind		
		Keep away from me		
	C.	Better go and see a doctor		
		You need to take medicine		11X
		—John has caught a bad cold.		V .XE.
	7	<u> </u>		-172
		It's too bad		I don't believe it
		I'm sorry to hear that	D.	Take it easy
	6,	—, Wang?		. 7//// () . 9
, ,	Y	—I've got a headache and I fe		
		What's wrong	В.	What the matter is
		What is matter	D.	How about you
	7、	—My stomach hurts. I feel sic	k.	K+ (1)
		—For safety's sake,	冷	
		go to see a doctor tomorrow		
		Better to go to hospital	/ >	0,0
		you'd better see a doctor at one	ce	
TC II		Quick go to hospital		
I al		g about Weather	•	
	1,	—It seems to be clearing up.		9
	٨	—That will be a nice change,	\overline{C}	can't it D. doesn't it
	A.	isn't it B. won't it	С.	can't it D. doesn't it
	۷,	—How cold is it today?		
	Α.	Just so—so	В	not too
		It's ten below zero		Yes, it is
	3,	?	υ.	105, 1015
1		—It's very cold and damp.		, 7/%
	Α.	What's the weather		<i>///</i> //
	В.	How's the weather today		
		Is it raining last night		
11		Might it have rained a lot		XIV.
. C	4、	—Do you like the weather in N	Nort]	h China?
		—Not really, but no		
		I fit it	В.	I am used to it
	C.	I used to it	D.	I agree to it
		5. —I wonder what the weath	her i	is going to be like tomorrow?
			-	
		—That's a good idea.	X	
		Let's look through the paper		.1 1
		Let's listen to the weather repo	ort o	n the radio
	C.	Better be care of the radio		

	Pay attention to the radio				
6、			Δ	I those is a silogent hugge	
	It certainly is. The sun is shirtIt's lovely.	ning	and	there is a pleasant breeze.	
Α.	What nice it is	I	3.	How nice it is here	
	It is like spring here			What a good day here	
7、	—What a nice day, isn't it?			, J	
			7		
	\mathcal{E}			, isn't it?	
8,	Yes, I agree.	D. I	Cea	lly?	
01	$-\overline{Yes}$, a bit cold, though.				
A.	Cold weather, isn't it				
В.	Bad weather, don't you think				×
C.	Freezing, isn't it				
	Nice day, isn't it				15.
9,	today?				
Δ	—It's nice and warm. What's the weather				
	What's the weather like			11=1	
	How is the weather like				
	How does the weather look like			-172	
10	—Do you think it is going to s	now	ov	er the weekend?	
٨	I don't believe	R I	do	n't believe it	
				lieve not	
itati				x//>.0_\	
1,	-Would you like to come around			meal on my birthday?	
	—Oh, yes. Thank you very much	ch.	5	-0,3	
A.	When is your birthday? What day is your birthday?				
D.	When were you born?	8	\frown'		
Ď.	What time is your birthday?		4		
	—Have you got anything to do	tomo	orre	w?	
		20. 3	т	T 1, 1 1	
				I won't be busy	
C.	Certainly have I —Would you like to come to the			that's a pity	
٥,	— I have to do my home			a, i iain.	
A.				n't, I'm afraid.	_^
				pity!	4
4	—Helen, I'd be glad if you would	ld co	me	and have tea with us on Frid	ay.
Δ	I try to go			,7/1/	C
	Many thanks for your kind invi	tatio	n. I	will	K
	I am very busy		,		
	I must go				
5.	—How about going to "Grand"				
A.	well. It's a long time since	we n	ıaa	a good meal.	
	That sounds like a good idea			BKR JA	
	Thank you				
D.	But I'm too busy			M.	
6、	—Do you have to go? Can't you				
A	I really think I must b	oe of	i no	OW.	
				, I must , I can, but	
	—Would you like to come to the				
	J	III III			

	A.	I'd like B. I like it	C.	I'd like to	D.	I'd like it
	8,	—Will you be able to come an	d see	e us on Friday	7?	
	٨	I will have to work.		n't hana sa		
	A.	I believe yes B. I won't be able to D.	I'm	afraid not	1	
		—Shall I call for you of will y				
	•	—You'd better come for me,				
	A.	can you B. OK			would y	ou
	10,	—Would you like to come to	dinr	ner tonight?		
		—I'd like to, I'm too	bus	y.	D 1 .	
N / 1		and B. so) C.	as	D. but	
Mai		g an Appointment —Good morning, I'd like to se	e Mr	· Raker nless	e e	
	11	—Mr. Baker is quite busy				/XX/
	A.	You can't see him		- ·		151%
		You won't be able to see him				
		I'm afraid you won't be able to	see	him today.		'K
	A .	Please come next time.				
////	2、	—Will you be able to come to	see 1	us sometime i	next moi	nth?
	٨	I believe yes B.	I do	n't hone so	K.	K
		I won't be able to D.			- ;//>	
	,	—When will you be free this r				O',
		—, maybe we'll be free				1.9
		Let me be B. Let me see			D.	Think it over
	4、	—What time can I call on you	?	, X(\(\rangle\),	D',	
_		—Any time this evening will	be _	25 .	7	
	A.	OK B. right	X	C. good	D. free	
	٥,	—I'm sorry to say that I can't c — ? Haven't we agreed			tonight	•
	Α.			What is it no	w	
		How is it	D.	What do you	think	
	6、	—I have an appointment with	Mr. I	Black. My na	me is Jo	hn Brown.
		—Ah, yes, your appointment	is at	4:15	, please,	, Mr. Brown?
	Α.	Wait a minute	В.	May you wai	t	
	C.	Can you wait a minute	D.	Take it easy		
	/ \	I'm sorry to keep you waitinOh, not at all. I he	g. re or	nly a few min	utes	
	Α.	have been B. had been			D. will	l be
		—I'll come back tomorrow eve				7 - 7
	4				•	DTTN.
		All right		All right. Ni		
_1	C.	OK, wait for me		All right. See	e you the	en /
	9,	—Will you be at home next Su	ınday	y?		//x/ NO
	Δ	Yes, but why?	R	No, never mi	nd	4/
7).		Not at all.		Yes, of cours		
C		—Don't forget to come to my				
		·		71		
		I don't B. I won't	C.	I can't	D. I ha	iven't
Mal		g a phone call			KAL	
	L	—Hello, is Henry in?		9	-//	
	Δ	—I'm sorry, he isn't here. What's the matter	R	_! May I help y	011	
				Who are you		
		—Could you ask him to call m				
		J W/lantla vanus and a	1.0	0		

	A.	Sure	В.	Oh	(C. [Yes	D.	Well
•	3、	—?						7//	
		—Sure, it's	6525078	6.	•	(I)			
	Α.	What's you			r				
		Can I have							
	C.	Can I help	you tere) II O II O			. 1/1/2		
,	D.	Can you m	you ake vour 1	elenhone	numh)er			
		The operator					6		
								D	:
4	A.	over Wayld w	D. UII	tall Iahu	U. 11	11101 .49	ugn	D.	111
•	٦,	—Would yo	ou piease	tem joiin	1 cane	a.			
	A	— , p	rease.	7 ()	C I	T . 1 .	1	Ъ	TT -1.14
		Hold on	В. Но	ia up) C. F	1010	ı over	υ.	Hold out
(0,	—Is this nu	mber 612	3436/:					
			\wedge \cap						
1	Α.	No, you are	wrong		1				
	В.	Sorry, you'	ve got the	wrong p	hone				
(C.	No, you've	dialed the	e wrong r	numbei	r			
	D.	No, you are	right		. .				
	7	—Hello. M	ay I speak	to Zhou	Lan?				
/////	λ,	—Yes	_ <u>-</u> :						7/1-X
	Α.	My name is	s Zhou La	n					
	В.	I'm Zhou L	an						人
	C.	This is Zho	u Lan spe	aking				K	
		Zhou Lan's							300 i
	8,	—Do you w	vant to ha	ve a mess	sage?				
/ //	*	—No, than	ks. I	_ in half			7.7/		
	Α.	will call ag	ain		В. с			()-	
	C.	may phone	him		D. y	vou	ld call	0	
Shop					X	! -	- ()		
	1、	—I'd like to				le.		,	
		—How abo	out this ki	nd of typ	e?				
		—?			/) (\bigcirc		
	Α.	How many	is it	//////	B. I	Iow	is it		
(C.	How much	is it		D. I	Iow	expens	ive i	S
,	2、	— d	o you wa	nt?	•		_		
		—Half a ki	lo, please						
	A.	How many			B. V	Wha	it are app	oles	
		How many					much a		S
	3、	—What's th	e problen	1?				11	
		—I'm afrai			ize 12	and	l it's too	smal	1.
	Α.								it isn't suit
		—How muc							10
		—Ten doll		Tue billie					-7/2
V	A	How many		– ou want?					, 7/%
		What size of							
		How large							///////
		What size of							/ / / /
		—What abo			vootor	2		\mathcal{M}	\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\
	21	— What about				4			\\\/\.\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\
	Λ	costs too m		1 ou u	cciuc. E		take too	mula	h
~ ~									
		cost too ma		FIladrad).	spends t	00 11	iucii maandana?
	U \	—Would yo	ou mma 1	1 100KeC	ı at sor	ne (or your t	ape 1	ecorders?
	٨	I'd better to	saa what	the boss	hac to		z about i	t T	
						say	y about I	ι	
		Not at all, s			X				
		Thank you		oning					
		Yes, do tha			C	0			
	/ \	—Do you tl	nink the s	nirt really	/ IIIS II	ne?			

	— It goes well with your tie, too.
Α.	Of course it does B. Yes, it does
	I am not sure D. Perhaps it does
	—Shall I ask the shop keeper if I can
0,	—OK. And we'd better ask Mom whether it's cheap enough.
Δ	take it on B. try it on C. wear D. put it on
	—How much did you the dress?
<i>/</i> \	—We 210 yuan for it.
٨	spend, pay for B. pay for, cost for
	pay for, paid D. take, pay
	the Doctor
15	—Well,? —I feel hot and feverish.
٨	
	how do you feel like
	what's the matter with you what do you feel
	what do you feel
	what illness do you have
2,	Vac There My tamp antique casas all violet
	Yes, I have. My temperature seems all right.
	Do you know your temperature
	Have you taken your temperature
	Have you had your temperature
	Do you have your temperature
3、	—Oh, doctor. Are you sure it's nothing serious?
K	—Yes, I'm sure of that.
	he'll well soon B. he can be right quickly
	he'll be all right soon D. he'll be good soon
4、	—You haven't had your lunch?
	—I had a little, but
	I didn't feel like eating
	I didn't feel like to eat
	I didn't like to eating
	I didn't want to eating
5、	
	—I'm feeling even worse after taking the medicine.
	Are you feeling better B. How are you feeling
	How are you getting on D. How are you going
6、	—How about your headache now?
	—I can't get rid of it. I don't know what's the matter.
	—Take it easy
	—Thank you, doctor.
	Take this medicine before you go to bed
	Drink plenty of water and take a good rest
	Take this medicine a day three times
D.	Go home and lie in bed for a good rest
7_{\star}	—My whole body feels weak and I've got a headache.
	$\pm \frac{2}{\sqrt{2}}$?
	How long ago did you get it this
	How long have you been like this
	How soon have you got it
	How soon have you liked this
	sts and Offers
1,	—Can I count on you for help?
	As you like. B. I'm sorry.
	Yes, you certainly can D. Why do you ask?
2,	—Could you spare me some ink?

	Yes, of course	В.	Not at all
	Yes, I cold		Never mind
3、	—Let me help you carry the b	ox.	
	—No, I can manage, but	_•	Y
Α.	not at all	В.	it doesn't matter
С.	thank you just the same	D.	the same to you
4、	—Will you make me a kite?		
			
	I'm glad		I'll be glad
			I'll be glad to
5,	—You seem to get lost. Need	help	0?
	<u></u>	41	19
	Yes, would you help me with	tne	bag?
	Yes, take me please.		X/.\?.7//.
	Help me find the key, please.	4	
	I'm looking for Shanghai Roa		Would you mind looking after my got?
0,	—Not at all	ıр. v	Would you mind looking after my cat?
Ā	I've no time	R	I'd rather not
	I'd like it		I'd be happy to
			lp, which drills shouldn't you say?
Δ	Could you do me a favor	1 110	ip, which drins shouldn't you say
R.	Would you do me a favor		-1/2 N
	May I ask a favor of you		11/1/2/ 0/ /
	Can you give me a help		2////02
	—Can I have some meat?		
	—Certainly, just		×7/> 0-
Α.	take it as you like	В.	eat it as you please
	help yourself		help yourself at home
	for Permission	JA	
	—Would you mind if I played	the	violin here?
	—·		00
A.	No, you won't	Β.	No, do as you please
С.	Yes, I don't mind	D.	Yes, do as you please
2,	—May I stop here?	•	- 1/2
	—No, you	•	
	mustn't B. might not	C.	needn't D. won't
3,	—Shall I tell John about it?		
	—No, you I've told hi		
	needn't B. wouldn't		mustn't D. shouldn't
4、	—Can I use your tape recorde	r for	r a while?
	—Yes,	ъ	
A.	go ahead		you can't broke it
	all right		no, sorry
/24	? I didn't quite catch you.		////2/ 20
Α.	Will you please repeat it again	1	
	Pardon		
	What did you say		V.////
	Say it again now	at d	uring the class. He puts up his hand and save to his
	teacher:	ci u	uring the class. He puts up his hand and says to his
	Excuse me, I can't stand any 1	ong	er
	Will you please let me go?	ong	CI.
	Please, sir, may I be excused?		
	I must go outside.	W-	-X
	—Can I go and have a look at	it?	
, ,	—Yes, of course.	70.	
٨	After me		B. Come this way
7.			D. Come uns way

C.	Y ou may look	υ.	I his direction	
dvic	e and Suggestions		X/. \?.7//.	
1,	—I usually go there by train.			
	—Why not by boat for a ch	nange	e?	
A.	to try going		trying to go	
	to try and go		try going	
	—I'd like information abo			el.
	Well, you could have word w			
	some, a B. an, some			1
	—I'm afraid I've got a bad cold.		,	
A.	Never mind			
В.	Keep away from the medicine			4
	Better go and see a doctor			
	You need take a medicine			AX
4、	—I can't see the words on the black	kboa	rd.	121
	—Perhaps you need			
A.	to examine your eyes			1
	to have your eyes examined			
C.	to have examined your eyes		11X	
	your eyes to be examined			
	—Let's go and see our teacher on T	Геас	hers' Day.	
	That's will do		That's all	
	That's all right	D	All right	

专题十 动词简述

实义动词

一、定义: (具有实际意义的动词)用来说明主语动作,状态的词,可以独立做谓语。

二、分类

1.及物动词 (vt)

及物动词后要接宾语意义才完整,宾语可以是名词、代词、to do 不定式、v-ing、句子

Eg: I like books.

I like her.

I like reading books.

I like to read books

I feel like (that) I was a bird.

扩充:

(1) 及物动词+宾语+宾语补足语

- 1) adj 做补语 keep sb/sth +adj 让某人(物)保持某种状态 make sb /sth+adj 使某人(物)保持某种状态 find sb/sth+adj 发现某人(物)怎么样 leave sb/sth+adj 留下某人(物)怎么样
- 2)动词原形做补语
 make sb do sth
 使某人做某某事
 have sb do sth
 使某人做某
 let sb do sth
 让某人做某
 see sb do sth
 看见某人做某事(过程)
 watch sb do sth
 观察某人做某事(过程)
 hear sb do sth
 听见某人做某事(过程)
 notice sb do sth
 注意某人做某事(过程)

3) to do 不定式做宾补

tell sb to do sth 告诉某人做某事 ask sb to do sth 询问某人做某事 want sb to do sth 想要某人做某事 wish sb to do sth 希望某人做某事 warn sb to do sth 警告某人做某事 teach sb to do sth 教某人做某事 expect sb to do sth 希望某人做某事 encourage sb to do sth 鼓励某人做某事 allow sb to do sth

允许某人做某事 advise sb to do sth 建议某人做某事 remind sb to do sth 提醒某人做某事 request sb to do sth 要求某人做某事 require sb to do sth 要求某人做某事 permit sb to do sth 允许某人做某事 persuade sb to do sth 说服某人做某事 order sb to do sth 命令某人做某事 need sb to do sth 需要某人做某事 leave sb to do sth 留下某人做某事 invite sb to do sth 邀请某人做某事 hate sb to do sth 讨厌某人做某事 force sb to do sth 强迫某人做某事 command sb to do sth 命令某人做某事 beg sb to do sth 乞求某人做某事

4) v-ing 做补语

discover sb doing sth 发现某人正在做某事 find sb doing sth 发现某人正在做某事 hear sb doing sth 听见某人正在做某事 watch sb doing sth 看到某人正在做某事 keep sb doing sth 使某人某人保持做某事 keep sb from doing sth 阻止某人做某事 notice sb doing sth 注意到某人正在做某事 prevent sb (from)doing sth 阻止某人做某事 see sb doing sth 看到某人正在做某事 stop sb doing sth 让某人停止做某事 stop sb from doing sth 阻止某人做某事

(2) 及物动词+间接宾语+直接宾语 give sb sth=give sth to sb 给某人某物 bring sb sth=bring sth to sb 带给某人某物 pass sb sth=pass sth to sb 给某人传某物 post sb sth=post sth to sb 给某人寄某物 lend sb sth=lend sth to sb 借给某人某物 leave sb sth=leave sth to sb 给某人留下某物 offer sb sth=offer sth to sb 给某人提供某物 teach sb sth=teach sth to sb 教某人某物 tell sb sth=tell sth to sb 告诉某人某物 write sb sth=write sth to sb 给某人写什么东西 show sb sth=show sth to sb 向某人展示某物 make sb sth=make sth for sb 给某人制作某物 cook sb sth=cook sth for sb 给某人做什么饭 buy sb sth =buy sth for sb 给某人买某物

二、不及物动词

不及物动词,可单独使用,后面不能直接跟宾语,不及物动词后要加上介词,才可 跟宾语。

Eg: Look,the girl is dancing. (look 单独使用,后不接宾语)

Listen, someone is singing.

(listen 单独使用,后不接宾语)

He arrived at school at 8 this morning.
(arrive 不及物动词,后加介词 at 才可以接宾语 school)

He lives in China. (live 不及物动词,后加介词 in 才可接宾语 China)

系动词

- 1. 定义:系动词是用来帮助说明主语状况、性质、特征等的动词,本身有词义,但是不能单独做谓语动词,后面必须跟表语一起构成谓语动词
- 2. 分类

(1) be 动词类 (表状态) am,is,are,was,were

(2) 感官类 look,smell,taste,sound,feel, seem (似乎),appear (显得)

- (3) 持续类 keep,stay,remain,stand,lie
- (4) 变化类 become,go,get,grow,turn

Tips: (1) 系动词没有被动语态

(2) 表示状态类的系动词不用于进行时(feel 除外), 变化类的系动词表示"渐渐的..."可用于进行时.

助动词

一、定义:用来帮助动词的词,不能单独使用,有动词时才出现。二、分类

1.助动词 be

(1) 构成进行时

1)构成现在进行时 am/is/are+现在分词 2)构成过去进行时 was/were+现在分词

(2) 构成被动语态

1)现在时的被动语态 am/is/are+动词的过去分词

2)过去时的被动语态 was/were+过去分词

2.助动词 do/does/did 构成否定句和一般疑问句 do 用于一般现在时,主语是非单三时 does 用于一般现在时,主语是单三时 did 用于一般过去式

3.助动词 will/would,shall/should will 用于一般将来时 would 用于过去将来时 shall 用于一般将来时主语是第一人称时 should 用于过去将来时主语是第一人称时

4.助动词 have/has/had have 用于现在完成时,主语是非单三 has 用于现在完成时,主语是单三 had 用于过去完成时。

情态动词

一、定义:表示主语的态度和观点的词,本身有意义,不能单独做谓语特点:没有人称和数的变化, 后必须跟动词原形

二、分类

- 1. 纯粹情态动词: can/could,may/migth,must
 - (1) Can
 - 1) 表示能力,能、会 Eg:He can speak English.

2) 表示请求、允许,可以 Eg:Can I use your pen?

(2) Could

- 1) 用在过去时中,表示能力,能、会 Eg: He could swim when he was 5 years old.
- 2) 用在疑问句中表示委婉请求,语气比 can 更委婉 Eg:Could I use you pen?
- (3) May

表示请求、许可,可以;表示祝愿

Eg: You may come.

你可以回家 (许可)

May I use you pen?

我可以用你的钢笔吗? (请求)

May you be happy!

祝你幸福(祝愿)

4) Might

May 的过去式,也可表示请求许可,语气比 may 更委婉

Eg: Migth I smoke here?

我可以在这抽烟吗?

(5) must 表示主观看法 , 必须

Eg: I must eat something.

区分 haveto, 必须, 不得不, 表示客观强迫

Eg: I have to do my homework.

- 2. 情态兼实意动词 need、dare 做情态动词 need/dare+do sth 做实意动词 need/dare+to do sth
- 3. 情态兼助动词 Will/would,shall/should

三、情态动词一般疑问句的回答

can 的肯定回答用 can,否定用 can't could 的肯定回答表示过去时,肯定用 could,否定用 couldn't 表示请求时肯定用 can,否定用 can't may 的肯定回答用 can,否定用 mustn't must 的肯定回答用 must,否定回答用 needn't/don't have to. need 的肯定回答用 must,否定回答用 needn't

专题十一 主谓一致

就近原则

就近原则:

当主语由以下词语连接时,谓语动词要与邻近的主语保持一致

or(或者) either...or(或者...或者) neither...nor(既不...也不) not only...but also(不仅...而且) not...but(不是...而是) There be 句型

Eg:

1. He or I <u>am</u> going to clean the room. 他或者我将要打扫房间

I or he<u>is</u> going to clean the room. 我或者他将要打扫房间

2. Either Lucy or her sisters go shopping every week. 每周要么 Lucy 要么她的姐姐们去购物

Either lucy's sisters or she goes shopping every week. 每周要么 Lucy 的姐姐们要么她自己去购物

3. Neither the books nor the pen <u>is</u> hers 那些书和那只钢笔都不是她的

Neither the pen nor the books <u>are</u> hers. 那支笔和那些书都不是她的

4. Not only Tom but also his parents <u>are good</u> at speaking English. 不仅 Tom 而且他的爸爸和妈妈都很擅长说英语

Not only Tom's parents but also he <u>is good</u> at speaking English. 不仅 Tom 的爸爸和妈妈而且他也很擅长说英语

5. Not Lucy and Lily but their brother <u>has</u> a dog. 不是 Lucy 和 Lily,而是他们的弟弟有一条狗

Not their bother but Lucy and Lily <u>have</u> a dog. 不是她们的弟弟,而是 Lucy 和 Lily 有一条狗

6. There <u>is</u> a book and two pens on the desk 桌子上有一本书和两只钢笔

There <u>are</u> two pens and a book on the desk. 桌子上有两支笔和一本书

就远原则

就远原则:

当主语由以下词语连接时, 谓语动词要与较远的主语保持一致

with (和) along with (和) together with (和) combined with (和) as well as (和) except (除了) besides (除了...还) but (除了) in addition to (除了...还) apart from (除了) like (像) such as (例如) including (包含) rather than (而不是) more than one (不止) no less than (不亚子)

- 1. The woman with his two daughters **goes** shopping every weekend. 那位女士和她的两个女儿每周末都去购物。
- 2. Lucy and Lily ,together with Mary,<u>take</u> dancing lessons after school. Lucy 和 Lily,还有 Mary 放学之后要上舞蹈课
- 3. The pen ,combined with two books ,**is** hers. 那支钢笔和两本书都是她的
- 4. The parents as well as their daughter <u>are</u> good at speaking English 那对父母和他们的女儿都很擅长说英语

5. No one except me **knows** the news 除了我没人知道那个消息

6. Noboday but two girls **is** in the classroom. 班级里除了 2 个女孩没有其他人

7. The teacher ,in addition to his students,<u>is</u> interested in the book. 除了老师,学生们也对那本书感兴趣

8. Everyone apart from Tom and Tim **passes** the exam. 除了 Tom 和 Tim 其他人都通过了考试

9. Questions like/ (such as) this one <u>are</u> difficulty to answer 像这种的问题很难回答

10.All the students including Tom **pass** the exam. 所有学生包括 Tom 都通过了考试

11.Tom rather than his sisters <u>has</u> finished doing homework. Tom 而不是他的姐姐完成了作业

12. More students than one has finished reading the book. 不过 more than 通常不分开,所以常见句子会是这样的 More than one student <u>has</u> finished reading the book. 不止一个学生读完了那本书

14.My brother,no less than I,<u>is</u> a basketball fan. 我的弟弟不亚于我,也是一个篮球迷

就后原则

就后原则:

当以下短语后接名词时,谓语动词取决于后面所加名词形式。

some of none of

most of the rest of all of half of 分数+of 百分数+of

Eg:

1. Some of the students <u>are</u> from America. 一些学生来自美国 (are 取决于,复数名词 students)

Some of the news <u>is</u> wrong. 有一些消息是错误的 (is 取决于,不可数名词 news)

2. None of the boys <u>are</u> 10 years old. 男孩儿中没有一个是 10 岁的 (are 取决于,复数名词 boys)

None of the information **is** correct. 信息没有一个是正确的 (is 取决于,不可数名词 information)

3. Most of the students <u>are</u> girls. 大多数学生是女孩 (are 取决于,复数名词 girls)

Most of the water <u>is</u> wasted. 大部分水都被浪费了 (is 取决于,不可数名词 water)

4. The rest of the books <u>are</u> theirs. 剩下的书是他们的 (are 取决于,复数名词 books)

The rest of the beef <u>is</u> eaten by the dog. 剩下的牛肉狗狗吃了 (is 取决于,不可数名词 beef)

5. All of the apples <u>are</u> very expensive. 所有的苹果都很贵 (are 取决于,复数名词 apples) All of the milk <u>is</u> very expensive 所有的牛奶都很贵 (is 取决于,不可数名词 milk)

6. Half of the students <u>have</u> finished the homework.

一半的学生已经完成了作业 (have 取决于,复数名词 students)

Half of the homework has been finished.

一半的作业已经被写完了 (has 取决于,不可数名词 homework)

7. Two thirds of the cities in China are larger than Japan.

中国三分之二的城市都比日本大 (are 取决于,复数名词 cities)

Two thirds of the wine **is** on sale. 三分之二的酒在减价销售 (is 取决于,不可数名词 wine)

8. Ninety percent of the students <u>are</u> reading books. 90%的学生都在读书
(are 取决于,复数名词 students)

Fifty percent of the water <u>was</u> polluted in the accident. 在那场事故中一半的水都被污染了 (was 取决于,不可数名词 water)

单数原则

常见谓语动词用单数情况

一、不定代词 either of ,neither of ,one of ,each ,every ,more than one , many a,

Eg:

1.Either of you needs to clean the room. 你们两个中的一个人需要打扫房间

2.Neither of the books is worth reading. 这两本书都不值得读

3.One of the langest rivers in the world is Changjiang River. 世界上最长的河之一是长江

4.Each student has an English book. 每个学生都有一本书

5.Every coin has two sides. 凡事都有两面性

6.More than one boy wants to get a car. 不止一个男孩想要一辆汽车

7.Many a student doesn't want to do homework. 许多学生都不想做作业

二、复合不定代词

Someone, somebody, something Anyone, anybody, anything Everyone, everybody, everything No one, nobody, nothing

Eg:

- 1. Someone is singing in the classroom. 有人在教室里面唱歌
- 2. Anyone needs to be quiet in the libiary. 任何人在图书馆里都需要保持安静
- 3. Everyting goes well. 一切都好
- 4. Nothing is wrong with your computer. 你的电脑没问题
- 三、动名词短语、不定式短语、名词性从句做主语

Eg

- 1. Reading books is one of my hobbies. 读书是我的爱好之一
- 2. To say is one thing and to do is another 说是一回事,做是另一回事
- 3. When and where to build the new school is not decided yet. 什么时候在什么地方建造学校还没有决定

What he said is wrong. 他说的都是错的

三、and 连接的两个单数名词表示同一人,同一事件或同一概念时

Eg:

1. The actor and singer is very famous. 那名演员兼歌手很出名

2. Bread and butter is a popular breakfast in Britain. 黄油面包在英国是很受欢迎的一种早餐

3. The knife and fork has been washed by me. 我已经洗过刀叉了

四、由 every、no、each、many a 修饰的名词单数,由 and 连接时,谓语动词还是用单数

Eg:

1. Every student and every teacher has left school. 每个学生和老师都已经离开了学校

2. No boy and no girl likes the book. 没有男孩和女孩喜欢那本书

3. Each man and woman needs to be treated equally. 每个男人和女人应该被公平对待

4. Many a sheep and many a cow is eating grass on the farm. 许多羊和牛在农场上吃草

五、表示时间,数目,距离,重量,金钱等名词复数做主语时当做整体来看,谓语动词 用单数

Eg:

1. Two hours is enough for you to do your homework. 两小时足够你写作业了

2. The number of the students is sixty. 学生的数量是 50 人

- 3. Five kilometers is too far for them to run.
- 5 千米对于他们来说太远了而跑不了
- 4. 80 kilograms means you should exercise.

	80 公斤意味着你该锻炼身体了	X \\ //	.
	5. 100 yuan is paid to the shopkeeper. 100 元被付给了店主	SILL	?
	六、数学中的四则运算		
	Eg:		
	1. Three and five is eight. 三加五等于八		Λ <u>Χ</u> Χ
	2. Three times five is fifteen. 三乘以五等于十五		7
	 Ten minus four is six. 十減四等于六 巩固训练(夯实基础) 	-Y	ZX-X
	1. Nothing but carsin the shop.		, ,
	A. is sold B. are sold C. 2. No one except Jack and Tomthe		D. are going to sell
	A. know B. knows C.	is knowing D.	are known
	3. Seventy percent of the students in our A. is B. are C.		_from the countryside are coming
	4\of the money	_used up.	C
	A. Three-five, are C. Three-fifths, has been D.	Three-fifths, hav Third-fifths, is	e been
	5. The number of the people who	cars inci	easing.
	A. owns, are B. owns, is C.	own, is D.	own, are
	A. was B. were C.	in English in the I would be	
		ashing.	D. are
	A. needs B. are needing C.		are wanting
	8. On each side of the street a 1	ot of trees.	
	A. stands B. grow C.		are grown
	9. Some person calling for you a	is heing D	will be
	A. are B. is C. 10. All that can be eateneaten u	ip.	-///
	A. are being B. has been	C. had been	D. have been
	11 Tom's teacher and friend M		///// NO
1		are being	D. has
	12. Your new clothes fit you, but mine A. doesn't fit B. don't fit C.	me. doesn't fit for	D. don't fit for
	21. GOODII CIIC D. GOII CIIC C.	GOODII t III IOI	L GOII t III IOI

____for the plan.

B. are

B. are

B. are

13. Neither he nor I_

14. Many a student_

A. has made

15 Peter, perhaps John,____

17. Between the two buildings

A. am

A. is

A. is

16. Laying eggs_

_a monument.

D. were

D. seems

D. have

B. have made C. has been made D. had made

____playing with the little dog.

C. is

_that mistake before.

are C. were the ant queen's full-time job.

C. has

	A. stand	В.	stands	C.	standing	D.	is standing
18、	I, whoA. am The United Nati	_you	r good friend	l, wil	l share your j	joys	and sorrow.
	A. am	В.	is	C.	are	D.	was
19、	The United Nati	ions_	in 1	1945.	Qui, Y		,
	A. were found	в.	were tounge	ea	C. was four	nded	D. was found
20,	wer					_	~
	A. Mr Smith				The Smiths	D.	Smiths
21,	The glass works	<u> </u>	in 1959	. ~		_	
22	A. were set up	.В.	was set up	C.	were put up	D.	were built
22、	Three hours with	h you	ir girl friend	_	to b	e a s	short time.
22	Three hours with A. seem It was reported t	В.	seems C.	1S S	eeming D.	nas	seemed
23	It was reported t	inat s	SIX		uding a boy.	D	1 1.:11
24	A. was killed	В.	were killed	С.	was killing	υ.	nad killed
245	The police	for	_a prisoner.	ahin	r for is so	orobi	ing D. are searched for
25	Deer fast			CIIIII	g 101C. 18 SE	arciii	ing D. are searched for
231	A. run B.	riine	an dogs.	runn	ing D will	l run	Alli, Y
26.	The wounded	Tuils	good care o	f her	e now	I I UII	
201	A. is taken B.	are 1	eing taken	C	are taking		D. is taking
27	The whole class		greatly	mov	ed at his word	ds.	2. Istaling
	A. was	В.	were	C.	had	D.	is
28	Over 80 percent	of th	ne population	of C	China	pea	sants.
	Over 80 percent A. was B. There	is	C. are	D.	will be		1>-
29、	There	_a kn	ife and fork	on th	ne table.	11.	A 0/ ,
	A. seems to be	в.	seem to be		C. is seemi	ng to	be D. are
30.	Those whoA. are liking His familyA. all are		_singing may	' join	us.	11	N V
	A. are liking		B. likes		C. enjoy	$, \Omega$	D. is fond of
31、	His family		_music lover	S.	75 7	O,	
	A. all are	В.	are all	C.	is	D.	are being
				4 4			_
32、	A professor and	a wr	nter	_pre	sent at the me	eeting	g.
32 _{\sqrt}	A professor and A. was B.	a wr is	C. were	_pre	D. had been	eeting	g.
32,	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe	a wr is es	C. were	_pre:	Sent at the me D. had been	etinį n	g.
32,	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe	a wr is es	C. were	_pre:	Sent at the me D. had been	etinį n	g.
32\ 33\ 34\	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in a	a wr is es B. our s	C. were were chool each	_woi_C.	D. had been out. have been an Engl	n D. ish d	had been ictionary.
32\ 33\ 34\	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in a	a wr is es B. our s	C. were were chool each	_woi_C.	D. had been out. have been an Engl	n D. ish d	had been ictionary.
32\ 33\ 34\	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a	is is B. our s	were chool each has	_wor C. _to ti	D. had been nout. have been an Engle had he question.	D.	had been ictionary. are having
32, 33, 34, 35,	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi	is is B. our s B. insweiven	were chool each has er B. has bee	_wor C. _to to	D. had been nout. have been an Engl had he question. en C. wer	D. ish d D.	had been ictionary. are having ven D. had given
32, 33, 34, 35, 36,	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting between an analysis of the students.	a wr is es B. our s B. answer iven by th	were chool each has er B. has beer e window is	_wor C. _to t the c	D. had been nout. have been an Englishad he question. en C. were only one of the	D. ish d D.	had been ictionary. are having
32, 33, 34, 35, 36,	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting between an analysis of the students.	a wr is es B. our s B. answer iven by th	were chool each has er B. has beer e window is	_wor C. _to t the c	D. had been nout. have been an Englishad he question. en C. were only one of the	D. ish d D.	had been ictionary. are having ven D. had given
32 33 34 35 coun	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting to ntryside in our sel A. are B. is	a wr is B. our s B. answer iven by th hool.	were chool each has er B. has beer e window is	_wor C. _to t n giv the o	D. had been nout. have been an Englishad he question. en C. were only one of the	D. ish d D.	had been ictionary. are having ven D. had given
32 33 34 35 coun	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting to ntryside in our sel A. are B. is Our family	a wr is es B. our s B. answe iven by th hool.	were chool each has er B. has been e window is were a happy one	_wor C. _to t n giv the c	D. had been nout. have been an Englishad he question. en C. weronly one of the	D. ish d D. re giv	had been ictionary. are having ven D. had given idents whofrom the
32、 33、 34、 35、 36、 coun	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting lentryside in our sch A. are B. is Our family A. is B.	a wr is es	were chool each has er B. has been e window is were a happy one C.	_wor C. _to to n giv the o	D. had been nout. have been an Engl had he question. en C. wer only one of the was	D. ish d D. re give	had been ictionary. are having ven D. had given idents whofrom the
32、 33、 34、 35、 36、 cour 37、 38、	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting beautryside in our scl A. are B. is Our family A. is B. Most of the mist A. were made	is is es. B. our s B. unsweiven by the hool. C. are takes B.	were chool each has er B. has been e window is were a happy one C. becare made	wor C to the co D _ was cause C.	D. had been nout. have been an England had he question. en C. were only one of the was D. of carelessne has been ma	D. ish d D. re give	had been ictionary. are having ven D. had given idents whofrom the
32、 33、 34、 35、 36、 cour 37、 38、	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in a A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting b attryside in our sel A. are B. is Our family A. is B. Most of the mist A. were made Most of his time	is is es. B. our s B. unsweiven by the hool. C. are takes B.	were chool each has er B. has been e window is were a happy one C. becare made in readi	C. to the or the	D. had been nout. have been an Engl had he question. en C. wer only one of the was D. of carelessne has been ma ovels.	D. ish d D. re give sturt wer ess. de	had been ictionary. are having ven D. had given idents who from the D. were making
32、 33、 34、 35、 36、 coun 37、 38、 39、	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting beautryside in our sel A. are B. is Our family A. is B. Most of the mist A. were made Most of his time A. are spent	a wrises. B. our s B. unsweiven by the hool. C. are takes B.	were chool each has er B. has been e window is were a happy one C. becare made in readi B. is spent	C. to to the control of the control	D. had been nout. have been an Engl had he question. en C. wer only one of the was D. of carelessne has been ma ovels. C. were specification.	D. ish d D. re give setting wer ess. de	had been ictionary. are having yen D. had given idents whofrom the be D. were making D. was spending
32、 33、 34、 35、 36、 coun 37、 38、 39、	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting beautryside in our sel A. are B. is Our family A. is B. Most of the mist A. were made Most of his time A. are spent	a wrises. B. our s B. unsweiven by the hool. C. are takes B.	were chool each has er B. has been e window is were a happy one C. becare made in readi B. is spent	C. to to the control of the control	D. had been nout. have been an Engl had he question. en C. wer only one of the was D. of carelessne has been ma ovels. C. were specification.	D. ish d D. re give setting wer ess. de	had been ictionary. are having yen D. had given idents whofrom the be D. were making D. was spending
32、 33、 34、 35、 36、 coun 37、 38、 39、	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting beautryside in our sel A. are B. is Our family A. is B. Most of the mist A. were made Most of his time A. are spent	a wrises. B. our s B. unsweiven by the hool. C. are takes B.	were chool each has er B. has been e window is were a happy one C. becare made in readi B. is spent	C. to to the control of the control	D. had been nout. have been an Engl had he question. en C. wer only one of the was D. of carelessne has been ma ovels. C. were specification.	D. ish d D. re give setting wer ess. de	had been ictionary. are having yen D. had given idents whofrom the be D. were making D. was spending
32、 33、 34、 35、 36、 coun 37、 38、 39、	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting beautryside in our sel A. are B. is Our family A. is B. Most of the mist A. were made Most of his time A. are spent	a wrises. B. our s B. unsweiven by the hool. C. are takes B.	were chool each has er B. has been e window is were a happy one C. becare made in readi B. is spent	C. to to the control of the control	D. had been nout. have been an Engl had he question. en C. wer only one of the was D. of carelessne has been ma ovels. C. were specification.	D. ish d D. re give setting wer ess. de	had been ictionary. are having yen D. had given idents whofrom the be D. were making D. was spending
32、 33、 34、 35、 36、 coun 37、 38、 39、	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting beautryside in our sel A. are B. is Our family A. is B. Most of the mist A. were made Most of his time A. are spent	a wrises. B. our s B. unsweiven by the hool. C. are takes B.	were chool each has er B. has been e window is were a happy one C. becare made in readi B. is spent	C. to to the control of the control	D. had been nout. have been an Engl had he question. en C. wer only one of the was D. of carelessne has been ma ovels. C. were specification.	D. ish d D. re give setting wer ess. de	had been ictionary. are having yen D. had given idents whofrom the be D. were making D. was spending
32、 33、 34、 35、 36、 coun 37、 38、 39、	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting beautryside in our sel A. are B. is Our family A. is B. Most of the mist A. were made Most of his time A. are spent	a wrises. B. our s B. unsweiven by the hool. C. are takes B.	were chool each has er B. has been e window is were a happy one C. becare made in readi B. is spent	C. to to the control of the control	D. had been nout. have been an Engl had he question. en C. wer only one of the was D. of carelessne has been ma ovels. C. were specification.	D. ish d D. re give setting wer ess. de	had been ictionary. are having yen D. had given idents whofrom the be D. were making D. was spending
32、 33、 34、 35、 36、 coun 37、 38、 39、	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting beautryside in our sel A. are B. is Our family A. is B. Most of the mist A. were made Most of his time A. are spent	a wrises. B. our s B. unsweiven by the hool. C. are takes B.	were chool each has er B. has been e window is were a happy one C. becare made in readi B. is spent	C. to to the control of the control	D. had been nout. have been an Engl had he question. en C. wer only one of the was D. of carelessne has been ma ovels. C. were specification.	D. ish d D. re give setting wer ess. de	had been ictionary. are having yen D. had given idents whofrom the be D. were making D. was spending
32、 33、 34、 35、 36、 coun 37、 38、 39、	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting lantryside in our scl A. are B. is Our family A. is B. Most of the mist A. were made Most of his time A. are spent The rest of the n A. were I know that all A. was When and where A. are Not only the wo	a wrises B. our s B. answeiven by the hool. C. are takes B. as B.	were chool each has er B. has been e window is were a happy one C. becare made in readi B. is spent ver are getting is stook place were so but also the	word_Cword_Cto to to to give the constancewas ausee Cong not Ccon wCcon wCmac.	D. had been nout. have been an Engl had he question. en C. were only one of the was D. of carelessne has been materials. C. were specification of the care is still unknown.	wer ess. de D. Cnow Dnot	had been ictionary. are having ven D. had given idents whofrom the dents whofrom the dents whostarted by the dents whostarted by the dents were not have there.
32、 33、 34、 35、 36、 cour 37、 38、 39、 40、 41、 42、 43、	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting beautyside in our scl A. are B. is Our family A. is B. Most of the mist A. were made Most of his time A. are spent The rest of the n A. were I know that all A. was When and where A. are Not only the wo A. are	a wrises B. our s B. unsweiven by the hool. C. are takes B. ethises B. orkers B.	were chool each_has er B. has been e window is were a happy one C. becare madein readi B. is spentveraregetting is stook place_were s but also the were		D. had been nout. have been an Engl had he question. en C. were only one of the was D. of carelessne has been made been been been been been been been be	wer ess. de D. Cnow Dnot	had been ictionary. are having ven D. had given idents whofrom the dents whofrom the dents whostarted by the dents whostarted by the dents were not have there.
32、 33、 34、 35、 36、 cour 37、 38、 39、 40、 41、 42、 43、	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting beautryside in our scl A. are B. is Our family A. is B. Most of the mist A. were made Most of his time A. are spent The rest of the n A. were I know that all A. was When and where A. are Not only the wo A. are Very few ———————————————————————————————————	a wrises B. our s B. unsweiven by the hool. C. are takes B. E. ovel B. B. orkers B.	were chool each has er B. has been e window is were a happy one C. becare made in readi B. is spent ver are getting is stook place were so but also the were his address	word_C	D. had been nout. have been an Engl had he question. en C. were only one of the was D. of carelessne has been manovels. C. were speciesting. is rell with her. arestill unk is hineis e town.	wer ess. de ent D. Cnow D. cnot D.	had been ictionary. are having ven D. had given idents who from the dents who seem D. were making D. was spending seem were has there. has
32、 33、 34、 35、 36、 cour 37、 38、 39、 40、 41、 42、 43、 44、	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting beautryside in our scl A. are B. is Our family A. is B. Most of the mist A. were made Most of his time A. are spent The rest of the n A. were I know that all A. was When and where A. are Not only the wo A. are Very few A. knows	a wrises. B. our s B. unsweiven by the hool. C. are takes B. B. e this B. orkers B. B.	were chool each has er B. has been e window is were a happy one C. becare made in readi B. is spent were are getting is stook place were so but also the were his address know	word_Cto to to a give the constance Cwas ause Cng not Ccon wCcon wCcon wCin the constance C.	D. had been nout. have been an Engl had he question. en C. were only one of the was D. of carelessne has been manovels. C. were speciesting. is rell with her. arestill unk is hineis e town. are knowing	wer ess. de ent D. Cnow D. cnot D.	had been ictionary. are having ven D. had given idents who from the dents who from the property of the propert
32、 33、 34、 35、 36、 cour 37、 38、 39、 40、 41、 42、 43、 44、	A professor and A. was B. The pair of shoe A. was The students in A. have More than one a A. have been gi The boy sitting beautryside in our scl A. are B. is Our family A. is B. Most of the mist A. were made Most of his time A. are spent The rest of the n A. were I know that all A. was When and where A. are Not only the wo A. are Very few ———————————————————————————————————	a wrises. B. our s B. unsweiven by the hool. C. are takes B. B. e this B. orkers B. B.	were chool each has er B. has been e window is were a happy one C. becare made in readi B. is spent were are getting is stook place were so but also the were his address know	word_Cto to to a give the constance Cwas ause Cng not Ccon wCcon wCcon wCin the constance C.	D. had been nout. have been an Engl had he question. en C. were only one of the was D. of carelessne has been manovels. C. were speciesting. is rell with her. arestill unk is hineis e town. are knowing	wer ess. de ent D. Cnow D. cnot D.	had been ictionary. are having ven D. had given idents who from the dents who from the property of the propert

46. Twenty miles _a long way to cover. D. seem to be A. were B. are C. is 47. Nine plus three twelve. A. makes B. make C. is making D. are making 48. There are two roads and either to the station. A. leads B. lead C. are leading D. is leading 49. My father, together with some of his old friends, there already. A. have been B. has been C. had been D. will be 50. My family as well as I glad to see you. C. is D. was A. am B. are

专题十二 基本时态

一般现在时

一、谓语动词是 be 动词

1.意义:表示存在的某种状态

2.结构:

肯定: 主语+be (am,is,are) +其他

否定: 主语+be+not+其他

一般疑问句: Be+主语+其他?

特殊疑问句:特殊疑问词+一般疑问句

特殊疑问词: "6W+1H" What 什么(物品,事情) When 什么时候(时间) Where 哪里(地点) Who 谁(人) Why 为什么(原因) Which 哪一个(选择) How 怎样(方式,感受)

Eg:I am a student.(肯定)
I am not a student.(否定)
Are you a student?(一般疑问句)

She is a beautiful girl. (肯定) She isn't a beautiful girl. (否定)

Is she a beautiful girl? (一般疑问句)

- 二、谓语动词是实意动词
- 1. 意义:表示经常性习惯性发生的动作或事情。

2.结构:

肯定:主语(非单三)+动词原形+其他

主语(单三)+动词单三形式+其他

否定: 主语 (##=) +don't+动词原形+其他 主语 (#=) +doesn't+动词原形+其他

一般疑问句:

Do+主语 (非单三) +动词原形+其他

Does+主语(单三)+动词原形+其他

单三:两个条件缺一不可

1) 第三人称:除了 I、we、you 其余的都是第三人称

- 2) 单数
- 2. 肯定句变否定句步骤:

有情有 be 直接用,无情无 be 找助动

- (1) 先看句子是否有 be 动词和情态动词
- (2) 如果有 be 动词和情态动词,变否定句,直接在其后加 not

(is not=isn't, are not=aren't, am not 没有缩写)

- (3) 如果没有情态动词和 be 动词,变否定句,要借助助动词
- (助动词 do 用于主语是非单三时; 助动词 does 用于主语是单三时)
- (4) 助动词加 not 后,放在主语后,实意动词前,动词要恢复原形
- (do not=don't,does not=doesn't)
- 4.肯定句变一般疑问句步骤:

有情有 be 直接用,无情无 be 找助动

- (1) 先看句子是否有 be 动词和情态动词
- (2) 如果有 be 动词和情态动词,变一般句,把 be 动词提前,如果有第一人称,要变成第二人称。
 - (3) 如果没有情态动词和 be 动词,变一般疑问句,要借助助动词》
 - (4) 助动词放在句首,如果有第一人称,要变成第二人称,注意动词要恢复原形
- 5. 动词原形变动词单三形式规则
 - (1) 一般情况下在动词后直接加 s
- (2) 以 s,x,sh,ch, o 结尾的加 es
- (3) 以辅音字母加 y 结尾的变 y 为 i 加 es
- (4) have-has
- 三、时间标志词

频率副词:always,usually,often,sometimes,hardly ever,seldom,never

every 系列: every day、every year、every week、every month 多久一次系列: once a week, twice a day, three times a year.

四、一般现在时注意点

1. 当表示普遍真理和客观事实时要用一般现在时

Eg: The earth goes around the sun.

地球绕着太阳转

Light travels faster than sound

光比声音传播速度快

2. 表示按计划、规定要发生的动作,常用动词

begin,come,leave,go,arrive,start,stop,return,open,close

Eg:The train leaves at 10.

火车在十点钟离开 (规定好的)

Class begins at 8 in the morning.

八点开始上课 (规定好的)

3. 在时间状语从句(when, after, before, not...until)和条件状语从句(if, unless)中,当主语是一般将来时时,从句要用一般现在时表示将来时,即"主将从现"。

Eg:When he comes, I will tell you.

当他来的时候,我将会告诉你(他还没有来,用现在时 comes 表示将来)

We will stay at home if it rains tomorrow.

如果明天下雨的话,我将待在家(雨还没有下,用现在时 rains 表示将来)

一般过去时

一、谓语动词是 be 动词

1.意义:表示过去存在的某种状态

2.结构:

肯定: 主语+be (was,were)+其他

否定: 主语+be+not+其他

·般疑问句: Be+主语+其他?

Tips:单数 was,复数 were

Eg:I was a student. (肯定)

I was not a student. (否定)

Were you a student? (一般疑问句)

She was a beautiful girl. (肯定)

She wasn't a beautiful girl. (否定)

Was she a beautiful girl? (一般疑问句)

- 二、谓语动词是实意动词
- 3. 意义:表示过去发生的动作或事情。
- 4. 结构:

肯定: 主语+动词过去时+其他

否定: 主语+didn't+动词原形+其他

一般疑问句:

Did+主语+动词原形+其他?

特殊疑问句: 特殊疑问词+一般疑问句

5. 肯定句变否定句步骤:

有情有 be 直接用,无情无 be 找助动

- (1) 先看句子是否有 be 动词和情态动词
- (2) 如果有 be 动词和情态动词,变否定句,直接在其后加 not
- (was not=wasn't,were not=weren't)
- (3) 如果没有情态动词和 be 动词,变否定句,要借助助动词 did
- (4) 助动词加 not 后,放在主语后,实意动词前,动词要恢复原形 (did not=didn't)
- 4.肯定句变一般疑问句步骤:

有情有 be 直接用,无情无 be 找助动

- (1) 先看句子是否有 be 动词和情态动词
- (2) 如果有 be 动词和情态动词,变一般句,把 be 动词提前,如果有第一人称,要变成第二人称。
 - (3) 如果没有情态动词和 be 动词,变一般疑问句,要借助助动词 did
 - (4) 助动词放在句首,如果有第一人称,要变成第二人称,注意动词要恢复原形

Eg:He went shopping yesterday (肯定)

He didn't go shopping yesterday(否定) Did he go shopping yesterday(一般疑问句) Yes,he did. No,he didn't

- 6. 动词原形变动词过去式规则
- (5) 一般情况下在动词后直接加 ed
- (6) 以不发音的 e 结尾的动词直接加 d
- (7) 以辅音字母加 y 结尾的变 y 为 i 加 ed
- (8) 以重读闭音节结尾的辅元辅结构双写尾字母加 ed

(9) 不规则变化需要特殊记

五、时间标志词

yesterday 系列:yesterday morning,yesterday afternoon...

last 系列: last night, last year, last week

ago 系列: three days ago,a year ago,some days ago

In+过去年份: in 1990,in 2008

其他: just now, at that time, in the past, a long time ago

一般将来时

一、意义:表示将来发生的动作或存在的某种状态

二、结构:

1.will/shall+动词原形 (shall 主语是第一人称, will 可以用于各种人称)

肯定: 主语+will+动词原形+其他

否定: 主语+will+not+动词原形+其他

一般疑问句: Will+主语+动词原形+其他?

(注: will 为助动词)

变否定句: will 为助动词,直接在 will 后加 not

变一般疑问句: will 为助动词,不用借助助动词,直接把 will 提前,注意如果有第一人称要变为第二人称

Eg:I will have a picnic next week. (肯定)
I will not have a picnic next week (否定)
Will you have a picnic next week? (一般疑问句)
Yes,I will. No,I won't.

2. be going to+动词原形(be 动词为助动词)

肯定: 主语+be going to+动词原形+其他

否定: 主语+be +not+going to+其他

一般疑问句:

Be +主语+going to+动词原形+其他

变否定句: 含有助动词 be, 直接在 be 后加 not 变一般疑问句: 含有助动词 be,直接放在句首,如果有第一人称变第二人称

Eg:We are going to see a film tomorrow evening.

We aren't going to see a film tomorrow evening.

Are you going to see a film tomorrow evening?

Yes,we are. No,we aren't.

六、时间标志词

tomorrow 系列:tomorrow morning,tomorrow afternoon...

next 系列:next week,next month,next year

later 系列: three days later,a week later...

In+时间段: in two minutes, in a week, in three days

其他: the day after tomorrow, in the future

七、will 和 be going to 的区别

1. be going to 表示有计划性的, will 表示比较随意

Eg: We are going to have an exam next week.

我们下周将要进行考试(有计划)

He is going to go abroad for further education after graduation.

他毕业之后将要出国深造(有计划)

She will answer the door.

她将去开门(没计划)

2. be going to 表示有某种迹象表明将要发生, will 表示必然会发生, 谁也阻挡不了。

Eg:Look at the black clouds, it's going to rain.

看黑色的乌云, 马上要下雨了(有迹象表明将要发生)

He will be 15 years old next year.

他明年 15 岁(谁也阻挡不了他明年 15 岁)

Tomorrow will be Sunday.

明天是星期日(谁也阻挡不了明天是周日,必然发生)

It will be Children's Day next week.

下周是儿童节(谁也阻挡不了下周是儿童节,必然发生)

八、注意

1. 表示位置移动的非延续性动词,要用现在进行时表示将来时常见动词: go,come,fly,move,leave,arrive,start,begin,sail

Eg:I am leaving for Beijing tomorrow.

我将要去北京了 Wait a minute I am coming. 等一下,我马上就来 He is flying to America next weekend. 他下周末将要飞美国

2. 表示严格按照原定计划,时刻表将要发生的事情要用一般现在时表示将来时 Eg:The train leaves at 10.

The meeting begins at 8

3.在时间状语从句(when, after, before, not...until)和条件状语从句(if, unless)中,当主语是一般将来时时,从句要用一般现在时表示将来时,即"主将从现"。

Eg:When he comes, I will tell you.

当他来的时候,我将会告诉你(他还没有来,用现在时 comes 表示将来) We will stay at home if it rains tomorrow. 如果明天下雨的话,我将待在家(雨还没有下,用现在时 rains 表示将来)

现在进行时

一、意义:

- 1.表示此刻正在发生或进行的动作
- 2.表示现阶段一直进行的动作
- 3.表示反复发生的动作或存在的状态

二、结构:

肯定: 主语+be (am,is,are) +V-ing+其他

否定: 主语+be+not+V-ing+其他 一般疑问句: Be+主语+V-ing+其他?

Eg:I am reading a book .(肯定) I am not reading a book.(否定) Are you reading a book?(一般疑问句) Yes,I am. No,I am not. He is playing basketball. (肯定) He isn't playing basketball (否定) Is he playing basketball? (一般疑问句) Yes,he is. No,he isn't.

- 三、动词原形变动现在分词(V-ing)规则
- 1.直接在动词词尾加 ing
- 2.以不发音的 e 结尾的,去 e 加 ing
- 3.以重读闭音节结尾的辅元辅结构双写尾字母加 ing

Eg:swim,run,sit,hit,get,put,let,

4.以 ie 结尾的, 把 ie 变 y 加 ing

Eg:lie(说谎), tie(系), die(死)

四、时间标志词

Look (看), listen (听), now (现在), at the moment (此刻), right now (立刻, 马上), at present (目前), this week (这周), these days (这些天), Don't talk (不要说话), Be quiet (安静点), Where be+sb (某人在哪里).It's+...o'clock

五、注意

1. 表示现阶段正在进行的动作,常用 these days, these years, this week 作时间状语

Eg:He is working in the factory these three years. 他这三年一直那个工厂里工作

Lucy is reading a book this week.

这周 Lucy 一直在读一本书

2. 表示渐变的过程,常用动词:get,go,grow,become,turn,run

Eg:The daytime is getting longer and longer in summer. 在夏天白天变得越来越长

The leaves are turning yellow in autumn. 在秋天树叶正在变黄 3. 表示反复发生的动做或持续存在的状态,常与 always,constantly,forever 等连用,往往带有说话人的主观色彩

Eg:He is always talking in class 他总是在班级吃东西

- 4. 不能用于进行时的动词
- (1) 表示事实状态的动词: have,belong to (属于), possess (拥有), includ (包含), contain (含有,容纳)等
 - (2) 表示心理状态的词: love,like,dislike,mind,hate 等
 - (3) 瞬间动词: accept,receive,allow,decide,refuse 等
- (4) 系动词 seem, appear, smell, feel, taste 等,但是 feel 表示一时的感受时可以用进行时

过去进行时

- 一、 意义:
- 1.表示过去某一时刻正在发生或进行的动作
- 2.表示过去某个阶段一直进行的动作
- 二、结构:

肯定: 主语+be (was,were) +V-ing+其他

否定: 主语+be (was, were) +not+V-ing+其他

一般疑问句: Be+主语+V-ing+其他?

Eg:I was reading a book at this time of yesterday (肯定)

I was not reading a book at this time yesterday. (否定)

Are you reading a book at this time yesterday? (一般疑问句)

Yes,I was. No,I wasn't.

He was talking when the teacher came in. (肯定)

He wasn't talking when the teacher came in. (否定)

Was he talking when the teacher came in? (一般疑问句)

Yes,he iwas. No,he wasn't.

Tips:

肯定句变否定句,因为有 be 动词,直接在 be 动词后加 not。 变一般疑问句,以为有 be 动词, be 动词提前, 注意第一人称变第二人称。

- 三、动词原形变动现在分词(V-ing)规则
- 1.直接在动词词尾加 ing
- 2.以不发音的 e 结尾的, 去 e 加 ing
- 3.以重读闭音节结尾的辅元辅结构双写尾字母加 ing

Eg:swim,run,sit,hit,get,put,let,

4.以 ie 结尾的, 把 ie 变 y 加 ing

Eg:lie (说谎), tie (系), die (死)

四、时间标志词

at that time (在那时), at this time yesterday (在昨天这个时候), at that moment (在那时), at 10 last night (昨天晚上 10 点钟), those days (那些天), that year (那一年), that week (那一周), the whole morning (整个早上)和 when, while, as 引导的时间状语从句。

注:

When 引导的时间状语从句,从句动词可用延续性动词也可以用非延续性动词 While 引导的时间状语从句,从句动词只能用延续性动词

Eg:She was doing her homework when her mother came in. 当她正在做作业的时候她的妈妈进来了(came 非延续性动词)

She was doing her homework while her mother was cooking. 当她在做作业的时候她的妈妈在做饭(cook 延续性动词)

现在完成时

一、意义:

- 1. 表示过去发生的动作对现在造成的影响或结果。
- 2. 表示从过去已经开始持续到现在的动作,并有可能一直持续下去。

二、结构:

肯定:主语+have/has+动词的过去分词+其他 否定:主语+have/has+not+动词的过去分词+其他 一般疑问句: Have/has+主语+动词的过去分词+其他?

Eg:I have finished my homework. (肯定) I haven't finished my homework. (否定) Have you finished your homework? (一般疑问句) Yes,I have. No,I haven't

He has seen the film three times(肯定) He hasn't seen the film three times(否定) Has he seen the film three times?(一般疑问句) Yes,he has. No,he hasn't

Tips:

肯定句变否定句,因为有动词 have/has,直接在助动词 have/has 后加 not。 变一般疑问句,因为有助动词 have/has,助动词 have/has 提前,注意第一人称变第二 人称。

三、动词原形变动词过去分词规则

- (10) 一般情况下在动词后直接加 ed
- (11) 以不发音的 e 结尾的动词直接加 d
- (12) 以辅音字母加 y 结尾的变 y 为 i 加 ed
- (13) 以重读闭音节结尾的辅元辅结构双写尾字母加 ed
- (14) 不规则变化需要特殊记

四、时间标志词

already (已经),just (刚刚), so far (到目前为止), before (以前), in the past+时间段 (在过去的...), ever (曾经), never (从不), yet (还,用于否定和疑问句), for+时间段, since+时间点, since+时间段+ago, since+从句(从句用一般过去时)

五、现在完成时注意点

1. have been to, have gone to, have been in 区别

(1) have been to 表示曾经去过某地,常和 just,ever,never,次数: once,twice,three times... 等连用,表示去过某地几次。

Eg:He has been to Hongkong three times. 他已经去过香港三次了。

I have never been to America.

我从没去过美国

(2) have gone to, 意思是去了某地,表示说话人不在场,一般不用于第一、第二人称作主语。

Eg:

- -Where is Tom?Tom 在哪儿?
- -He has gone to the library.他去图书馆了。
- (3) have been in 表示在某地待了多长时间,常与表示一段时间的状语连用

Eg:John has been in Beijing for three years. John 曾经在北京待过三年

2. 短暂性动词不与一段时间连用

常见短暂性动词转化成延续性动词

begin/go/get/reach/arrive/move—be
leave—be away
die—be dead
borrow—keep
buy—have
begin/start—be on
finish—be over
wake—be awake
open/close—be open/closed
join—be in
marry—be married
get up—be up
fall asleep—be asleep
catch a cold—have a cold

Eg:The film has begin for 10 minutes. (\times) The film has been on for 10 minutes. ($\sqrt{}$)

I have bought the book for two days. (\times) I have had the book for two days. (\sqrt)

	1. —When did y	ou meet your Eng	glish teacher?		
	—While I	a bike along	g Jiaomen River.		
	A. rode	B. was riding	C. ride	D. will ride	
()2. He comp	iter games when l	his parents left home.	So he didn't know where the	ey were.
	A. is playing	B. plays	C. played	D. was playing	
()3. As usual, Sally	at 6:30 this	morning by her moth	ner to have breakfast.	

	A. has woken up B. woke up C. was woken up D. wakes up	
()4. —I was at the cinema at nine o'clock yesterday evening. What about you?	
	— I TV at home.	
	A. watch B. watched C. am watching D. was watching	
()5. —Where is your mother? —She in the kitchen.	
	A. cooks B. has cooked C. cooked D. is cooking	
()6. Tom like reading. Hepicture books with his dad every evening.	
	A. read B. reads C. is reading D. has read	
()7. —Nicole, I missed today's lesson, can you lend me your notebook?	>
	—Sorry, I it to Betty already.	
	A. lend B. lent C. will lend D. have lent	
()8. We have two days off a week. We at school from Monday to Friday.	1
	A. will study B. study C. studied D. are studying	
)9. —Have you ever been to Disneyland? —Yes. I there last summer.	
	A. will go B. went C. have gone D. was going	
()10. —Do you know the film Big Hero 6?	
	—Sure. I like it very much and I it three times since it was on.	
7	A. see B. saw C. have seen D. am seeing	
	X17, 00	
巩固	训练(夯实基础)	
	单项选择	
()1. —When did you meet him? —While I on the street.	
(A. walks B. walk C. was walking D. am walking	
()2. —Mum, why don't you go to sleep? —Your sister yet. I for her.	
(A. hasn't come back; am waiting B. didn't come back; was waiting	
	C. hadn't come back; was waiting D. came back; waited	
()3. —King White in our company for 20 years.	
`	Yes, and she here when she was 21 years old.	
	A. has worked; has come B. worked; comes)
	C. worked; came D. has worked; came	
()4. —Don't forget to visit me when you come here.	
, C	—OK. I you a call as soon as I there.	
$\langle \cdot \rangle$	A. gave; get B. will give; will get C. give; will get D. will give; get	
)5. —What did you do last summer vacation?	
	—Don't mention it. I always my parents on the farm.	
	A. was; helping B. /; helped C. would; help D. have; helped	
()6. —Would you like to see the movie? —No, thanks. I it twice.	

()7. —Are you still single? —No, I for two months.
A. have been married B. have married C. was marrying D. married
()8.—We will do some cleaning if the weather fine tomorrow.
—But I think it rain.
A. will be; is going to B. is; is going to C.is; has D. will be; has
()9. —Mike is preparing his luggage. —Yes. He for Canada on vacation.
A. leaves B. left C. is leaving D. has been away
()10. —Be quiet. Dad in the next room. —Sorry.
A. sleeps B. slept C. is sleeping D. was sleeping
17. (2) P. (1) P.
二、用所给单词的正确形式填空
1. I (go) to America next Friday.
2. Mary usually (go) to school at 7 o'clock.
3. Aunt Lily (be) a beautiful girl twenty years ago.
4. Tim (study) English for ten years.
5. By the end of last month, I (finish) the project.
6. He will go home if he (wake) up.
7. Kate is (leave) for Beijing tomorrow.
8. She asked when Lucy (come).
9. —Paul, what were you doing at nine last night.
—I (watch) a movie in the cinema with my friends.
10. Michael (teach) in a school in Yunnan from February to June next year.
A. 11/2
专题十三 并列句和倒装句
并列句
知识要点:
1、熟悉并掌握并列句的结构和常用的并列词的用法;
2、注意 while, when 和 for 等作并列连词的用法。 什么叫并列句:
由两个或两个以上的简单句并列连接起来的句子叫并列句。 并列句的基本句型:
一种外包的基本包型: 简单句 + 并列连词 + 简单句

类型	说明 	连接词 	例	旬	
		and, not	I help him and he helps me.	我帮助他,	他也帮助
	(联合关	onlybut(als	找。		

	-//X		们最好呆在家里,因为天正在下雨。 He didn't work hard, therefore he failed in the examination. 他学习不努力,因此这次考试不及格。 Hurry up, it's getting dark. 快点,天要黑了。
 句	因果关系	eitheror	Either you come to my place or I go to yours. 或者 你到我这儿来,或者我到你那去。 We had better stay at home, for it was raining. 我
列	选择关系	or, otherwise or else,	语有困难,然后她学习努力,进步很快。 We must hurry, or we'll miss the train. 我们必须快点,否则会赶不上火车。
	14 1/1 / C//	while, however, when 等	败多次但并没有气馁。 She has difficulty in learning English, however, she works hard and is making rapid progress. 她学习英
	转折关系	but, yet, still,	for advice. 我不想与他商量,他也不会征求我的意见。 He failed many times, but he didn't despair. 他失
 并	711)	neithernor 等	telegraphed her. 我们不仅给她写信而且还给她发了电报。 Neither I would consult him nor he would ask me
	系)	0),	Not only did we write to her but also we

注意:

(1) yet 和 still 是连接副词,也叫半连接词。它们是副词。又起连接作用,但不如 and, but, or 等语气强,用了 yet 或 still, 前面还可加 and 或 but。

He is tired, (but) still he will make another experiment. 他很累,但他仍然要做另一个实验。

I got up very early, (and) yet I failed to catch the first bus. 我起得很早,然而还是没有赶上头班车。

(2) while 意义相当于 at the same time 表示相反和对照,常用来连接两个意义对立的分句。

I like football, while my sister likes basketball. 我喜欢足球,而我姐姐喜欢篮球。 when = and then, just then 或 at that time, during the time.

We were ready to rush away, when the snake moved. 我们正准备离开,这时蛇移动了。 while 和 when 作为并列连词使用时常是放在第二个分句前边,并有逗号和第一分句隔开。

3、for 表示附加或推断的理由、原因。therefore 比 so 更正式, and so 比较口语化。

【专项训练】(夯实基础)

一、用适当的并列连词填空:	-/// `~
1. He couldn't know the truth about me,	he wouldn't treat me like this.
2. The bell is ringing the lesson is	over.
3. Although he was ill,he kept on w	vorking.
4. I can't make up my mindwe will	go to Shanghai we will stay in our
city.	·
5. He doesn't talk much,he think	as a lot.
6. It must have rained last nightthe	ground is still wet.
7. The president will visit the town in May $_$	he will open the new hospital.
8. Jane was dressed in greenMary w	as dressed in blue.
9、he did not speak distinctly	_I did not hear it clearly.
10. He is clever,, he often makes	mistakes.
11,did we write to her	_we called up her.
12. He hasn't any moneyI'm going 13. The child was sick; heI'm going 13.	ng to lend him some.
13. The child was sick: he. didn't	go to school.

14. Mary was neither happy, was she sad.	
15. Put on more clothes,you'll catch cold.	
二、选择最佳答案:	
ー、 心洋取住合余: 16 Some are reading magazines others are playing cards	
16. Some are reading magazines,others are playing cards. A. or B. for C. so D. while	
17. We must get up early tomorrow we'll miss the first bus to the Great Wall	
A. or B. for C. so D. while 17. We must get up early tomorrow. A. so B. or C. but D. however 18. —I don't like chicken fish. —I don't like chicken, I like fish very much. A. and, and B. and, but C. or, and D. or, but 19. We want high speed good quality. A. both, and B. either, or C. neither, nor D. not, but also 20. In spring it is hot cold here. A. both, and B. either, or C. neither, nor D. not only, but 21 does he writes well, he also speaks well. A. Not only, but B. Not, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 22. Use your head, you'll work it out. A. so B. or C. and D. for 23. I want to buy the jacket, I have not enough money with me. A. but B. so C. or D. for	4
18, —I don't like chicken fish.	7
——I don't like chicken, I like fish very much.	
A. and, and B. and, but C. or, and D. or, but	众
19. We want good quality.	5/
A. both, and B. either, or C. neither, nor D. not, but also	
20. In spring it ishotcold here.	//
A. both, and B. either, or C. neither, nor D. not only, but	
A Not only but Description of the disconsistance of the disconsis	
C. Fither or D. Roth and	
22. Use your head you'll work it out	
A so B or C and D for	
23. I want to buy the jacket. I have not enough money with me.	
A. but B. so C. or D. for	
A. but B. so C. or D. for 24, I am going to help Tom. A. Either, or B. Not, but C. Not only, and D. Each, and	
A. Either, or B. Not, but C. Not only, and D. Each, and	
25. The soldier was wounded,he pushed on. A. for B. and C. so D. yet	
A. for B. and C. so D. yet	
26 Do you know lim guarrelled with his classmate?	
——I don't know,	
A. nor don't I came B. nor do I care	
C. I don't care neither D. I don't care also	
C. I don't care neither D. I don't care also 27. He is a teacher,a singer as well.	
C. I don't care neither D. I don't care also 27. He is a teacher, a singer as well. A. but B. or C. nor D. and	
C. I don't care neither D. I don't care also 27. He is a teacher, a singer as well. A. but B. or C. nor D. and 28 should a man have courage, he should have wisdom and	
—I don't know, A. nor don't I came C. I don't care neither D. I don't care also 27. He is a teacher, A. but B. or C. nor D. and 28. should a man have courage, he should have wisdom and knowledge.	4
C. I don't care neither D. I don't care also 27. He is a teacher, a singer as well. A. but B. or C. nor D. and 28 should a man have courage, he should have wisdom and knowledge. A. Not only, but B. Neither, nor	S. S.
C. I don't care neither D. I don't care also The is a teacher, a singer as well. A. but B. or C. nor D. and D. and Should a man have courage, he should have wisdom and knowledge. A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and	5
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year,we can perform English short	5
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year,we can perform English short plays already.	らい
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year,we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or	
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year,we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or 30. She had escaped,the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great he	
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year,we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or 30. She had escaped,the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great he of the fire. A. so B. or C. but D. and	
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year,we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or 30. She had escaped,the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great he of the fire. A. so B. or C. but D. and	
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year,we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or 30. She had escaped,the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great he of the fire. A. so B. or C. but D. and 31. The work was difficult, ,he finished in on time.	
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year,we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or 30. She had escaped,the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great he of the fire. A. so B. or C. but D. and 31. The work was difficult, ,he finished in on time.	
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year,we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or 30. She had escaped,the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great he of the fire. A. so B. or C. but D. and 31. The work was difficult,,he finished in on time. A. but B. however C. otherwise D. therefore 32. The sky was cloudless the sun was shining.	
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year,we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or 30. She had escaped,the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great he of the fire. A. so B. or C. but D. and 31. The work was difficult,, he finished in on time. A. but B. however C. otherwise D. therefore 32. The sky was cloudless the sun was shining. A. but B. and C. for D. so	
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year,we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or 30. She had escaped,the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great he of the fire. A. so B. or C. but D. and 31. The work was difficult,, he finished in on time. A. but B. however C. otherwise D. therefore 32. The sky was cloudless the sun was shining. A. but B. and C. for D. so 33 many times, but he still couldn't understand it. A. Having been told B. Though he had been told	
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year,we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or 30. She had escaped,the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great he of the fire. A. so B. or C. but D. and 31. The work was difficult,, he finished in on time. A. but B. however C. otherwise D. therefore 32. The sky was cloudless the sun was shining. A. but B. and C. for D. so 33 many times, but he still couldn't understand it. A. Having been told B. Though he had been told	
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year,we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or 30. She had escaped,the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great he of the fire. A. so B. or C. but D. and 31. The work was difficult,, he finished in on time. A. but B. however C. otherwise D. therefore 32. The sky was cloudless the sun was shining. A. but B. and C. for D. so 33 many times, but he still couldn't understand it. A. Having been told C. He was told D. Having told 34. I was walking along the street I heard someone calling my name.	
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year,we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or 30. She had escaped,the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great he of the fire. A. so B. or C. but D. and 31. The work was difficult,,he finished in on time. A. but B. however C. otherwise D. therefore 32. The sky was cloudlessthe sun was shining. A. but B. and C. for D. so 33many times, but he still couldn't understand it. A. Having been told C. He was told D. Having told 34. I was walking along the streetI heard someone calling my name. A. when B. while C. and D. for	
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year,we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or 30. She had escaped,the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great he of the fire. A. so B. or C. but D. and 31. The work was difficult,,he finished in on time. A. but B. however C. otherwise D. therefore 32. The sky was cloudlessthe sun was shining. A. but B. and C. for D. so 33many times, but he still couldn't understand it. A. Having been told C. He was told D. Having told 34. I was walking along the streetI heard someone calling my name. A. when B. while C. and D. for	
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year, we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or 30. She had escaped, the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great he of the fire. A. so B. or C. but D. and 31. The work was difficult,, he finished in on time. A. but B. however C. otherwise D. therefore 32. The sky was cloudless the sun was shining. A. but B. and C. for D. so 33 many times, but he still couldn't understand it. A. Having been told B. Though he had been told C. He was told D. Having told 34. I was walking along the street I heard someone calling my name. A. when B. while C. and D. for 35. To be healthy, you must have a meal too big too small. A. either, or B. neither, nor C. not only, but also D. not, but	
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year,we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or 30. She had escaped,the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great he of the fire. A. so B. or C. but D. and 31. The work was difficult,,he finished in on time. A. but B. however C. otherwise D. therefore 32. The sky was cloudlessthe sun was shining. A. but B. and C. for D. so 33many times, but he still couldn't understand it. A. Having been told B. Though he had been told C. He was told D. Having told 34. I was walking along the street I heard someone calling my name. A. when B. while C. and D. for 35. To be healthy, you must have a meal too big too small. A. either, or B. neither, nor C. not only, but also D. not, but 36. Both Jane and Ellen, Mary, are studying at the same college.	
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year, we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or 30. She had escaped, the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great he of the fire. A. so B. or C. but D. and 31. The work was difficult,, he finished in on time. A. but B. however C. otherwise D. therefore 32. The sky was cloudless the sun was shining. A. but B. and C. for D. so 33 many times, but he still couldn't understand it. A. Having been told C. He was told D. Having told 34. I was walking along the street A. when B. while C. and D. for 35. To be healthy, you must have a meal too big too small. A. either, or B. neither, nor C. not only, but also D. not, but 36. Both Jane and Ellen, Mary, are studying at the same college. A. too B. and C. as well D. as well as	
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year,we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or 30. She had escaped,the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great he of the fire. A. so B. or C. but D. and 31. The work was difficult,,he finished in on time. A. but B. however C. otherwise D. therefore 32. The sky was cloudlessthe sun was shining. A. but B. and C. for D. so 33many times, but he still couldn't understand it. A. Having been told B. Though he had been told C. He was told D. Having told 34. I was walking along the street I heard someone calling my name. A. when B. while C. and D. for 35. To be healthy, you must have a meal too big too small. A. either, or B. neither, nor C. not only, but also D. not, but 36. Both Jane and Ellen, Mary, are studying at the same college. A. too B. and C. as well D. as well as	
A. Not only, but C. Either, or D. Both, and 29. We have studied English for only one year, we can perform English short plays already. A. yet B. for C. and D. or 30. She had escaped, the ring had fallen off and been damaged in the great he of the fire. A. so B. or C. but D. and 31. The work was difficult,, he finished in on time. A. but B. however C. otherwise D. therefore 32. The sky was cloudless the sun was shining. A. but B. and C. for D. so 33 many times, but he still couldn't understand it. A. Having been told C. He was told D. Having told 34. I was walking along the street A. when B. while C. and D. for 35. To be healthy, you must have a meal too big too small. A. either, or B. neither, nor C. not only, but also D. not, but 36. Both Jane and Ellen, Mary, are studying at the same college. A. too B. and C. as well D. as well as	

- D. still C. so A. or B. but they will die. 39. They must stay in the water_ D. and C. otherwise A. but B. so 40. We played outside till sunset it began to rain. A. when B. while C. yet
- 三、改错:
- 41. Although he has great learning, but he always works far into the night.
- 42. Because the boy is very naughty, so I'm angry with him.
- 43. Not only he himself works hard but he often helps others.
- 44. It must have rained much of late, because the river is so high.
- 45. They didn't tell me whether I should write to him nor whether I should see him personally.
- 46. If there were no plants, we would have no animals or no meat.
- 47. Now of course I don't want to say anything bad about anyone however have you noticed his strange manners?
- "I'm more thankful to you, sir, than I can say" I said, " and but I must make things clear."
- 49. He neither knows nor cares for what happened.
- 50、He did not like your suggestion, and but he raised no objection(反对).

倒装句

英语的基本句型是主语 + 谓语。如果将主语与谓语调换, 称倒装句。倒装句分全 到装句和半倒装句。

- 全倒装: 主语与谓语交换位置不需任何助动词, 叫全倒装。全倒装有以下三种
 - 1、当 here, there, out, in, up, down 等副词放在句首时, 句子需全倒装:

There goes the bell! 铃响了!

There lived an old man.

Here comes the bus.

注意:

- ①在这种情况下倒装仅限于不及物动词或 be 动词, 像 go, come, mush 等。
- ②主语如果是代词时不需倒装如 Away he went. 他走远了。 2、方位状语在句首,如:

In front of the house stopped a police car.

Nearby were two canoes in which they had come to the island.

Under the tree sat a boy.

- 3、直接引语在句首,这种情况可倒装也可不倒装
- "What does it mean?" asked the boy 或 the boy asked.
- 半倒装: 主语与谓语的助动词交换位置称半倒装, 有以下数种情况:
 - 1、否定意义的词在句首, 句子半倒装, 例如: little, never, not, no, hardly, rarely, seldom

Never shall I forget you.

At no time was the man aware of what was happening.

Little did I understand what he said to me at that time.

几对并列连词如 not only...but also, hardly... when 等连接两个并列句, 连词 在句首, 前句半倒装, 后句不倒装:

Not only was everything he had taker away from him, but also his German citizenship was taken away.

No sooner had I got to the bus stop than the bus started.

注意:

①not only…but also 连接两个并列主语时不需倒装, 如:

Not only you but also I like playing chess.

②neither...nor 在句首时, 前后两句都需倒装,

Neither do I have a sister nor does my husband.

3、only 在句首强调状语, 主句半倒装:

Only then did I realize that I was wrong.

Only in this way can I learn from my fault.

Only when the war was over in 1918, was he able to get back to work.

注意: only 强调主语不倒装:

Only the teachers can use the room.

4、so...that 句型, so 在句首时, 主句倒装, that 从句不倒装:

So easy is it that a clild can learn it.

So hard did he work that he finally won the fame.

I saw the film, so did he.

1、倒装句(Inversion)

英语的基本语序是"主语+谓语"。如果将谓语的全部或一部分放在主语之前,这种语序称为"倒装"。

一、倒装的类型

	+H4/	
类型	例 句	说明
完	Out rushed the students to welcome the foreign	整个谓语移至主
全	friends.	语之前。
倒	学生们涌出去欢迎外国朋友。	K
装		
部	Seldom does he go to school late. 他上学很少迟到。	只把系动词,情
	他上学很少迟到。	态动词,助动词
倒 装		或表语放在主语
装		之前。

二、倒装结构的基本用法

1、由于语法结构的需要而使用的倒装

_	1 11111111	初时而女叫仗用的国衣	
	情 况	例	说明
		Have you got a dictionary?	用完全或部分
	疑	你有一本字典吗?	倒装,但以疑问
	> →	Where did he go last Monday?	词或疑问词修
	问	上星期一他去什么地方了?	你的名词作主
	\vdash	Are you listening to the radio?	语的疑问句要
	句	你在听广播吗?	用正常语序。
	-	Who told you the news?	
	中	准告诉你那个消息的?	(5)
		Which boy broke this glass? 哪个男孩子把这个玻璃打破了?	
	"thora bo"	There are three wells in our village.	VIJ.
	结构中	我们村里有三口水井。	NATO
	SP149 1	There stands a big paper making factory by	-///
j	7	the river.	
1		河边有座大型造纸厂。	
4	在以 here,	Here is a letter for you.	使用完全倒装
		这儿有你一封信。	结构。
		There goes the bell. 铃响了。	但如果主语是
		Now comes your turn to play.	代词则用正常
		现在轮到你玩了。	语序。
		Away went the crowd one by one.	Ť
		人们一个一个地离去。	
	中	Look, there he comes! 看,他来了。	
	#: NI	Down she went 她下来了。	+ - 4
		I can't swim, nor (neither)can she.	表示也不
		我不会游泳,她也不会。	这样, neither
	nor 以 no	He hasn't been to the countryside, neither	和 nor 意思相

情况	例 句	- 说 明
more 开头	does he want to go there.	同,可以替换使
的句子中	他没有去过农村,他也不想去那里。	用,no more 表
	He did not turn up. No more did his wife.	示动作的程度
	He did not turn up. No more did his wife. 他没有来,他妻子也没有来。	并不比前面提
		到的稍强。意为
		也不…。
用在 as	Proud as the nobles are ,he is afraid to see me	. 从属连句 as 用
(尽管)	尽管这些贵族很傲慢,他却害怕见我。	于特殊语序,含
	Young as he is, he knows a lot.	义与 though,
步状语从	虽然他年轻,却知道很多东西。	although 相同,
句中	XCVI K V	但"as"这种结构
		可表示非常强
	CZYV	烈的对照, 必须
17.7		用倒装(表语提
WKT		前)

2、为了加强语气而使用的倒装。(使句子更加流畅,更加生动)

2,	Let viet		20/2 11/1
	情况	例 句	说明
	含有否	Never before have we seen such a sight.	常用否定词有:
	定意义	以前我们从来没有见过这样的情景。	never,not,hardly,
	的副词	Little did I think that he could be back	scarcely seldom,
	或连词	alive.	little, not until, not
	放在句	我没有想到他竟能活着回来。	onlybut also, no
	首时		soonerthan, hardly
		a gift.	(scarcely)when 等。
		我要到元旦那天才能给你礼物。	一般主句用部分倒
		Not only was everything that he had taken	装结构。
		away from him, but also his German	
		citizenship.	
		不仅他所有的一切被没收了,而且连他	
		的德国公民权也被剥夺了。	
	副词	Only then did he realize his mistakes.	only 起强调作用,其
	only 放	只有在那时,他才认识到自己的错误。	句型为"only +状语+
	在句首	Only in this way can you learn maths	部分倒装"。
	时	well.	
		只有用这种方法,你才能学好数学。	如置于句首的 only
		Only Mother can understand me.	修饰主语,则不用倒
		只有母亲最理解我。	装结构。
	77-1V	Only three of us failed in the exam.	-/: /\'_(
4	7	我们中只有三个人考试不及格。	.7/% - (1)
	虚拟语	Were they here, they would help us.	把从句中if省略将
	气条件	他们要是在这儿,他们会帮助我们的。	were, had 或 should
. 4	从句中	Had I been informed earlier. I could have	放在主语的前面。
		done something.	
4		我要是早得到通知,我就能干事了。) ///
		Should you fail, take more pain and try	
		again.	
		方一你失败了,就要更加刻苦,重新再	
		干。	
İ	直接引	"He is a clever boy"said the teacher.	主句主语和谓语次
	语的全	老师说:"他是个聪明的孩子。"	序颠倒,用完全倒
	部或一	"Go, Dick, go!"cried Tom,"Go home and	装。
	部分放	get help""走,狄克,走!"汤姆呼喊着,	但如果主句主语为
	在句首	"快回家去求援"	代词时或谓语部分

情况	例 句	说	明
时	"What do you think of the film?"he	比主语长,	一般不用
	asked.	倒装。	
	他问"你认为这部电影怎么样?"	1	
	"I'm leaving for Hongkong next		
	month"Mary told me yesterday.		
	玛利告诉我"我下月要去香港"。		
表示祝	May you succeed! 祝你成功。	谓语动词或	
愿的句	Long live the Communist Party of China.	一部分放在	主语的
子中	中国共产党万岁!	前面。	
副词 so	He is interested in pop-songs, and so am	表示前面所	说的情
在句首	I.	况也适合于	另一个
	他对流行歌曲感兴趣,我也如此。	人或另一事	·物的肯
4	They will learn chemistry next term, so	定句中。	, X/.
/-	will I.		
XIL	他们下学期学化学,我也学。		
J.N.	I can drive a car, so can my younger		
1/1/	brother.		
100	我会开汽车,我弟弟也会开车。	L. H. C. T. D.	. /
L N	—Tom won the first prize for the English	如果后面的	
	competition.	是单纯重复	胆识的品
•	—So he did.	意思,不表	不也适用
•	英语竞赛汤姆获得了一等奖。确实如此。	丁	事,则不
	It was cold yesterday. So it was.	用倒装结构	0
去库克	昨天天气冷。的确冷。	N.V	
	Often did we warn them not to do so.		
	我们曾多次警告他们不要这样做。	\cup	
always,	Many a time has she helped me with my English.		
many a time 等	她不止一次地帮助或学习英语。		
开头的	处介正 "八地市助致于万天石。		
句子中			
在方式	Thus ended his life.这样结束了他的生		
状语	finds chaca his inc. 还行均水 1 區間上 命。		
thus开	So loudly did he speak that even people in		
头的句	the next room could hear him.		
子中及	他讲话的声音那样大,连隔壁屋子里的		
程度状	人都听得见。		7
语 so 放			X
句首	. Ma.		7- Y
介词短	In the middle of the room stood a little		X
语作状	girl.	-1/2	
语,放在	在房间中央站着一个小女孩。	.7/3	
句首	In the distance was a horse.		5 0%
	马在远处。	(///\\)	NU
在强调	Such was Albert Einstein, a simple man of		不仅为了
表语的	great achievements.		为了使句
句子中	阿尔伯特·曼因斯坦就是这样一个人,一	子结构达到	
	个纯朴而又取得巨大成就的人。	调,或使上	卜文紧密
	Such is life. 生活就是这样。	衔接。	
	Nearby were two canoes in which they		
	had come to the island.	0	
	附近有两只他们来这个岛乘坐的独木	_	
	船。		
	7		

【专项训练】(夯实基础)

		學生		
1,		that we all went out, lying	in t	he sun.
	Α.	The weather so fine was		B. So fine was the weather D. So was fine weather
	C.	So the weather was fine		D. So was fine weather
2,1	Unde	er his arma pair of shoes	s wh	ich he had bought from the shop a few days before
	Α.	is B. are	C.	was D. were
3、		who had arrested him three		
		Before George stood the police		
		Before George the policeman		
		Before the policeman stood G		
		Before George did the policer		
4、	The	n we had been lookin	g for	rward to .
	Α.	came the hour comes the hour y when he started to explain _ she realized she had realized	ъ.	the hour came
	C.	comes the hour	D.	the hour is coming
5、	Onl	y when he started to explain		the reason for this.
	Α.	she realized	В.	did she realize
	C.	she had realized	D.	had she realized
6.	. 3	succeed in doing anythin	σ.	
	Ā.	Only by working hard we can	0	
×		By only working hard we can		11.=X
	C.	Only by working hard can we		
	D.	Only we can by working hard		
7、	Not	for a moment the truth	of v	your story.
>	Α.	he has doubted	В.	he doubts
	C.	did he doubt	D.	he doubts he did doubt aper tailoring than in Hong Kong.
8,	Nov	where else in the world	chea	aper tailoring than in Hong Kong.
-	A.	a tourist can find	В.	can a tourist find
-	C.	a tourist can find a tourist will find	D.	a tourist has found
		ardly when the bus such		
	Α.	they had got to the bus-ston	M	B. they got to the bus-ston
	C.	did they get to the bus-stop		D. had they got to the bus -stop
1(), M	lary doesn't speak French, and		does Joan.
	Α.	not B. neither	$\overline{\mathrm{C}}$.	either D. so
11.	、 —]	Do you know Jim quarrelled w	ith h	is brother? —I don't know, .
	Α.	nor don't I care	В.	nor do I care
	C.	nor don't I care I don't care neither	D.	I don't care also
12	, No	ot until the early years of the 19	th ce	enturywhat heat is.
	Α.	man did know	В.	man knew
	C.	didn't man know	D.	did man know
13		ter that we never saw her again	nor	from her.
	Α.	did we hear	В.	we heard
	C.	had we heard	D.	we have heard
14	Jol	nn won the first prize in the cor	itest.	
	Α.	So he did.	В.	So did he.
\	C.	So he did, too.	D.	So did he, too.
15.		he doesn't study well.		
	Α.	As he is clever	В.	He is as clever
41	C.	Clever as he is	D.	As clever he is
16	Yo	ou can never use my tape record	ler.	time should you touch that machine.
				Any D. No
17.	Sca	arcelythe roomti	he pl	hone rang.
		I had enteredwhen		
	C.	had I enteredwhen		have I enteredwhen
18		only save his life.		
			В.	the doctor can
			-	could the doctor
19		rdly anybody the boy,1	oeca	use he is rude.
	A.	does like B. likes	C.	do like D. like
			100	15

20,	20. So well that the teacher praised her.	
	A. she had done her homework	P.7//_
	B. her homework had been done	
	C. did she do her homework	10.11
	D. she did her homework	
21、	21. Only when to know him will you get alo	ong with him.
	A. do you come B. will you come	come
	A. do you come C. you come D. you will one	come
22,	22. Out, gun in hand.	
	A. did he rush B. rushed he	
	C. he rushed D. had he ru	ished
23,	22 II. h. d	
	A. so did he B. so he did C. s	so he would D. so would he
24、	24. Into the sky the light blue smoke.	2 2 20 110 110
,	A. so did he A. went up B. up went C. o So Little A. did he talk C. he was talking D. had he tale C. he was talking	did go un D. had gone un
25.	25. Little about his own life at the meeting	o are go up
251	A did he talk	,
	C he was talking D had he ta	lked
26	26. Under no circumstances first use nuclear	weapons
205	A. will China B. China will C. does	China D. do China
27、	7	
215	taken that examination, she could have A. Were she B. Had she b C. If she would have D. Had she	passed n.
	A. Were she C. If the year of the control of the c	be able to
20	C. If she would have D. Had she	AND THE STATE OF T
285	tomorrow, we would put off the match	till next Monday.
	A. Should it rained B. Were it to	o rain
20	A. Should it rained B. Were it to C. If it would rain D. Had it rained	ined
29、	29、Look, here	
	A. Mr. Brown comes B. does Mr.	
	C. comes Mr. Brown D. Mr. Brow	vn has come
30、	30. Oftenus good advice.	
	A. did she give B. she did g	ive
	C. she gave D. she has g	riven
31、	31. Not until I began to workhow much time	
	A. didn't I realize B. did I real	ize
	C. I didn't realize D. I realize	
32、	32. Littleabout his own safety, though he was	was in great danger himself.
	A. does he care B. did he car	
	C. he cared D. he cared	4. ^
	began our new lesson.	\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\
	A. But B. Thus C. S	Such D. So that
34,	A. But B. Thus C. S look down upon the poor.	V15 ~
	A. we should B. we sl	hould not
	C. do we D. shou	
35	35. Only when 30 years old to 1	
	A. was he, did he begin C. was he, he began D. he w	as, he began
	C was he he hegan D he w	as, did he begin
36.	Not once their plan.	us , ard ne oogin
301	A did they change B they	changed
		did changed
37	37. "It's very hot today."""	did changed
3/	A. So it is B. So is it C. So do	oes it D. So it does
301	88. A fish needs water and without water it will die	
		rill a man
20		s it with a man
<i>5</i> 9、	39. They arrived at the farmhouse, in front of which	11 1
	A. sat a small boy B. a small	
40	C. is sitting a small boy D. a sm	all boy sitting
40、	10. Society has changed andin it.	

- A. so have the people
- C. the people have so
- B. so the people have
- D. have the people so

II、改错

- 41. Only when was he 50 years old did he begin to learn French.
- 42. Little she knew Tom was was badly ill
- 43. Turn to the right and there are you.
- 44. And all around the fox in a circle was dogs.
- 45. —You can learn English well. —So can we.
- 46. I dare climb this tall tree, but do you?
- 47. Not once he kept his promise.
- 48. Many a time he has given us some good advice.
- 49. Such a noise there was that I couldn't work in the room.
- 50. Only does my mother understand me.

非谓语动词 专题十四

非谓语动词种类及句法功能

) 概述:

在英语中,不作句子谓语,而具有除谓语外其他语法功能的动词,叫做非谓语动词。 非谓语动词有动词不定式(the Infinitive);动名词(the Gerund);现在分词(the Present Participle); 过去分词(the Past Participle)。

- 1、非谓语动词与谓语动词的相同点有:
- 1) 如果是及物动词都可与宾语连用,例如:

They built a garden.

They suggested building a garden.

2)都可以被状语修饰:

The suit fits him very well.

The suit used to fit him very well.

3)都有主动与被动,"体"式(一般式;进行式;完成式)的变化。例如:

He was punished by his parents. (谓语动词被动语态)

He avoided being punished by his parents. (动名词的被动式)

We have written the composition. (谓语动词的完成时)

Having written the composition, we handed it in. (现在分词的完成式)

4)都可以有逻辑主语

They started the work at once. (谓语动词的逻辑主语)

The boss ordered <u>them</u> to start the work. (动词不定式的逻辑主语)

We are League members. (谓语动词的主语)

We being League member, the work was well done. (现在分词的逻辑主语)

- 2、非谓语动词与谓语动词的不同点有:
- 1) 非谓语动词可以有名词作用(如动词不定式和动名词),在句中做主语、宾语、 表语。
- 2) 非谓语动词可以有形容词作用(如动词不定式和分词),在句中做定语、表语 或宾语补足语。
 - 3) 非谓语动词可以有副词作用(如动词不定式和分词),在句中作状语。

(二) 非谓语动词的句法功能:

	H - 22 M J H J	1177.71117.					
分 分 非谓语	主语	表语	宾语	补语	定语	状语	同位语
不定式	✓	✓	√	✓	✓	✓	✓
动名词	✓	✓	-	(极少)	✓		✓
现在分词				✓	✓	✓	
过去分词				✓	✓	√	

二、非谓语动词用法:

(一)动词不定式: (to)+do,具有名词、形容词、副词的特征。

1、不定式的形式:

	ト(ロノハ) ト(・		
>	主动	被动	
一般式	to write	to be written	Nu. 1
进行式	to be writing	/	
完成式	to have written	to have been written	.//

否定式: not + (to) do

1)一般式:不定式的一般式所表示的动作与谓语动词动作同时发生或发生在谓语动词动作之后,例如:

I'm glad to meet you.

He seems to know a lot.

We plan to pay a visit.

He wants to be an artist.

The patient asked to be operated on at once.

The teacher ordered the work to be done.

2) 进行式: 不定式的进行式所表示的动作与谓语动词动作同时发生, 例如:

The boy pretended to be working hard.

He seems to be reading in his room.

3) 完成式: 不定式的完成式表示的动作发生在谓语动词动作之前,例如:

I regretted to have told a lie.

I happened to have seen the film.

He is pleased to have met his friend.

2、不定式的句法功能:

1) 作主语:

To finish the work in ten minutes is very hard.

To lose your heart means failure.

动词不定式短语作主语时,常用形式主语 it 作形式主语,例如上面两句可用如下形式:

It is very hard to finish the work in ten minutes.

It means failure to lose your heart.

2) 作表语:

Her job is to clean the hall.

He appears to have caught a cold.

3) 作宾语:

常与不定式做宾语连用的动词有: want, hope, wish, offer, fail, plan, learn, pretend, refuse, manage, help, agree, promise, prefer, 如果不定式(宾语)后面有宾语补足语,则用 it 作形式宾语,真正的宾语(不定式)后置,放在宾语补足语后面,例如:

Marx found it important to study the situation in Russia.

动词不定式也可充当介词宾语,如:

I have no choice but to stay here.

He did nothing last Sunday but repair his bike.

动词不定式前有时可与疑问词连用,如:

He gave us some advice on how to learn English.

4) 作宾语补足语:

在复合宾语中,动词不定式可充当宾语补足语,如下动词常跟这种复合宾语: want, wish, ask, tell, order, beg, permit, help, advise, persuade, allow, prepare, cause, force, call on, wait for, invite.

此外,介词有时也与这种复合宾语连用,如:

With a lot of work to do, he didn't go to the cinema.

有些动词如 make, let, see, watch, hear, feel, have 等与不带有 to 的不定式连用,但改 为被动语态时,不定式要加 to, 如:

I saw him cross the road.

He was seen to cross the road.

5) 作定语:

动词不定式作定语,放在所修饰的名词或代词后。与所修饰名词有如下关系:

A) 动宾关系: -

I have a meeting to attend.

注意:不定式为不及物动词时,所修饰的名词如果是地点、工具等,应有必要的分 词,如:

He found a good house to live in.

The child has nothing to worry about.

What did you open it with?

如果不定式修饰 time, place, way, 可以省略介词:

He has no place to live.

This is the best way to work out this problem.

如果不定式所修饰名词是不定式动作承受者,不定式可用主动式也可用被动式:

Have you got anything to sent?

Have you got anything to be sent?

B) 说明所修饰名词的内容:

We have made <u>a plan to finish the work</u>. C)被修饰名词是不定式逻辑主语:

He is the first to get here.

6) 作状语:

A)表目的:

He worked day and night to get the money.

She sold her hair to buy the watch chain.

注意不定式放句首时,逻辑主语与句子主语要一致:

wrong: To save money, every means has been tried.

right: To save money, he has tried every means.

wrong: To learn English well, a dictionary is needed.

right: To learn English well, he needs a dictionary.

B) 表结果:

He arrived late to find the train gone.

常用 only 放在不定式前表示强调:

I visited him only to find him out.

C) 表原因:

They were very sad to hear the news.

D) 表程度:

It's too dark for us to see anything.

The question is <u>simple</u> for him to answer.

7) 作独立成分:

To tell you the truth, I don't like the way he talked.

8) 不定式的省略: 保留 to 省略 do 动词。

If you don't want to do it, you don't need <u>to</u>.

9) 不定式的并列: 第二个不定式可省略 to。

He wished to study medicine and become a doctor.

(二) 动名词**:**

动名词既具有动词的一些特征,又具有名词的句法功能。

1、动名词的形式:

语		
态	主动语态	被动语态

I	式	X	
	一般式	doing	being done
	完成式	having done	having been done

否定式: not + 动名词

1) 一般式:

Seeing is believing. 眼见为实。

2)被动式:

He came to the party without <u>being invited</u>. 他未被邀请就来到了晚会。

3) 完成式:

We remembered <u>having seen the film</u>. 我们记得看过这部电影。

4) 完成被动式:

He forgot having been taken to Guangzhou when he was five years old. 他忘记五岁时 曾被带到广州去过。

5) 否定式: not + 动名词

I regret not following his advice. 我后悔没听他的劝告。

6) 复合结构: 物主代词(或名词所有格) + 动名词

He suggested our trying it once again. 他建议我们再试一次。

His not knowing English troubled him a lot. 他不懂英语给他带来许多麻烦。

2、动名词的句法功能:

1) 作主语:

Reading aloud is very helpful. 朗读是很有好处的。

Collecting stamps is interesting. 集邮很有趣。

当动名词短语作主语时常用 it 作形式主语。

<u>It's</u> no use <u>quarrelling</u>. 争吵是没用的。

2) 作表语:

In the ant city, the queen's job is laying eggs. 在蚂蚁王国,蚁后的工作是产卵。

3) 作宾语:

They haven't finished <u>building the dam</u>. 他们还没有建好大坝。

We have to prevent the air from being polluted. 我们必须阻止空气被污染。 注意动名词既可作动词宾语也可作介词宾语,如上面两个例句。此外,动名词作宾 语时,若跟有宾语补足语,则常用形式宾语 it, 例如:

We found <u>it</u> no good <u>making</u> fun of others. 我们发现取笑他人不好。

要记住如下动词及短语只跟动名词作宾语:

enjoy, finish, suggest, avoid (避免), excuse, delay, imagine, keep, miss, consider, admit (承认), deny(否认), mind, permit, forbid, practise, risk(冒险), appreciate(感激) be busy, be worth, feel like, can't stand, can't help, think of, dream of, be fond of, prevent...(from),keep ...from,stop... (from) ,protect...from,set about, be engaged in, spend...(in), succeed in, be used to, look forward to, object to, pay attention to, insist on, feel like

4) 作定语:

He can't walk without a <u>walking</u>-stick. 他没有拐杖不能走路。

Is there a swimming pool in your school. 你们学校有游泳池吗?

5)作同位语:

The cave, his hiding-place is secret. 那个山洞,他藏身的地方很秘密。

His habit, <u>listening</u> to the news on the radio remains unchanged. 他收听收音机新闻节 目的习惯仍未改变。

三) 现在分词:

现在分词既具有动词的一些特征,又具有形容词和副词的句法功能。

1、现在分词的形式:

_	1 1 70 1	-71 MAHAND -4.				
4	现在	及物动	词 write	不及物动词 go		
	分词 主动语态		被动语态	主动语态		
	一般式	writing	being written	going		
ſ	完成式	having written	having been written	having gone		

否定式:not + 现在分词

1) 现在分词的主动语态:现在分词主动语态的一般式表示与谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生,完成式表示的动作在谓语动词所表示的动作之前发生,常作状语。例如:

They went to the park, <u>singing and talking</u>. 他们边唱边说向公园走去。

Having done his homework, he played basket-ball. 做完作业,他开始打兰球。

2)现在分词的被动语态:一般式表示与谓语动词同时发生的被动的动作,完成式表示发生在谓语动词之前的被动的动作。

The problem being discussed is very important. 正在被讨论的问题很重要。

Having been told many times, the naughty boy made the same mistake. 被告诉了好几遍,这个淘气的孩子又犯了同一个错误。

2、现在分词的句法功能:

1)作定语:现在分词作定语,当分词单独做定语时,放在所修饰的名词前,如果是分词短语做定语放在名词后。

In the <u>following</u> years he worked even harder. 在后来的几年中,他学习更努力了。 The man <u>speaking to the teacher</u> is our monitor's father. 正与老师谈话的那个人是我

们班长的父亲。

现在分词作定语相当于一个定语从句的句法功能,如: in the <u>following</u> years 也可用 in the years <u>that followed</u>, the man <u>speaking</u> 可改为 the man <u>who is speaking</u>.

2) 现在分词作表语:

The film being shown in the cinema is exciting. 正在这家上演的电影很棒。

The present situation is inspiring. 当前的形势鼓舞人心。

be + doing 既可能表示现在进行时,也可能是现在分词做表语,它们的区别在于 be + doing 表示进行的动作是进行时,而表示特征时是系动词 be 与现在分词构成系表结构。

3) 作宾语补足语:

如下动词后可跟现在分词作宾语补足语:

see, watch, hear, feel, find, get, keep, notice, observe, listen to, look at, leave, catch 等。例如:

Can you hear her <u>singing the song</u> in the next room? 你能听见她在隔壁唱歌吗?

He kept the car waiting at the gate. 他让小汽车在门口等着。

4)现在分词作状语:

A)作时间状语:

(While) <u>Working</u> in the factory, he was an advanced worker. 在工厂工作时,他是一名先进工人。

B) 作原因状语:

Being a League member, he is always helping others. 由于是共青团员,他经常帮助他人。

C) 作方式状语,表示伴随:

He stayed at home, cleaning and washing. 他呆在家里,又擦又洗。

D) 作条件状语:

- (If) <u>Playing all day</u>, you will waste your valuable time. 要是整天玩,你就会浪费宝贵的时间。
 - E) 作结果状语:

He dropped the glass, breaking it into pieces. 他把杯子掉了,结果摔得粉碎。

F) 作目的状语:

He went <u>swimming</u> the other day. 几天前他去游泳了。

G) 作让步状语:

Though raining heavily, it cleared up very soon. 虽然雨下得很大,但不久天就晴了。

H) 与逻辑主语构成独立主格:

I waiting for the bus, a bird fell on my head. 我等汽车时,一只鸟落到我头上。

All the tickets having been sold out, they went away disappointedly. 所有的票已经卖光了,他们失望地离开了。

Time permitting, we'll do another two exercises. 如果时间允许,我们将做另两个练习。有时也可用 with (without) +名词(代词宾格)+分词形式

With the lights burning, he fell asleep. 他点着灯睡着了。

H)作独立成分:

<u>Judging from(by)</u> his appearance, he must be an actor. 从外表看,他一定是个演员。 <u>Generally speaking, girls are more careful.</u> 一般说来,女孩子更细心。

(四)过去分词:

过去分词只有一种形式: 规则动词由动词原形加词尾-ed 构成。不规则动词的过去 分词没有统一的规则要求,要-~一记住。

过去分词的句法功能:

1、过去分词作定语:

Our class went on an <u>organized</u> trip last Monday. 上周一我们班开展了一次有组织的 旅行。

Those elected as committee members will attend the meeting. 当选为委员的人将出席 这次会。

注意当过去分词是单词时,一般用于名词前,如果是过去分词短语,就放在名词的 后面。过去分词做定语相当于一个被动语态的定语从句。

2、过去分词作表语:

The window is broken. 窗户破了。

The were <u>frightened</u> at the sad sight. 他们对眼前悲惨的景象感到很害怕。

注意 be + 过去分词,如果表示状态是系表结构,如果表示被动的动作是被动语态。 区别:

The window <u>is broken</u>.(系表)

The window was broken by the boy. (被动)

有些过去分词是不及物动词构成的,不表示被动,只表示完成。如:

boiled water (开水)

fallen leaves (落叶)

newly arrived goods (新到的货)

the risen sun(升起的太阳)

the changed world(变了的世界)

这类过去分词有: gone, come, fallen, risen, changed, arrived, returned, passed 等。 3、过去分词作宾语补足语:

I heard the song <u>sung</u> several times last week. 上周我听见这首歌被唱了好几次。 有时过去分词做 with 短语中的宾语补足语:

With the work done, they went out to play. 工作做完了,他们出去玩去了。

4、过去分词作状语:

Praised by the neighbours, he became the pride of his parents. 受到邻居们的表扬,他成 为父母的骄傲。(表示原因)

Once seen, it can never be forgotten. 一旦它被看见,人们就忘不了。(表示时间) Given more time, I'll be able to do it better. 如果给予更多的时间,我能做得更好。(表 示条件)

Though told of the danger, he still risked his life to save the boy. 虽然被告之危险,他 仍然冒生命危险去救那个孩子。(表示让步)

<u>Filled</u> with hopes and fears, he entered the cave. 心中充满了希望与恐惧, 他走进山洞。 5、过去分词与逻辑主语构成独立主格:

All books returned at the end of the term, the library assistant was satisfied. 所有的书期 末时都还了,图书管理员很高兴。

The field ploughed, he began to spread seed. 地耕好了,他开始撒种子

非谓语动词用法对比

知识要点:

不定式与动名词做主语:

1、动名词做主语往往表示普通的、一般的行为,不定式做主语常表示某次具体的

Collecting information about children's health is his job. 收集有关儿童健康的信息是 他的工作。

It's necessary to discuss the problem with an experienced teacher. 与一位有经验的老 师讨论这个问题是有必要的。

2、常用不定式做主语的句型有:

(1) It's difficult (important, necessary) for sb. to do

- (2) It's kind (good, friendly, polite, careless, rude, cruel, clever, foolish, brave) of sb. to do.
 - 3、常用动名词做主语的句型有:

It's no good (use, fun) doing.

It's (a) waste of time one's doing. It's worth while doing.

不定式、动名词、分词做表语:

1、不定式做表语常表示谓语动词所表示动作之后发生的动作。

His teaching aim of this class is to train the students' speaking ability. 他这节课的教学 目的是要训练学生说的能力。

2、动名词做表语是对主语内容的解释,这时主语与表语位置可以互换,动名词常 用于口语中。

Its full-time job is laying eggs. 它的(指蚁后)的专职工作是产卵。

3、现在分词做表语表示主语的性质与特征;进行时表示正在进行的动作。

The task of this class <u>is practising the idioms.</u> (现在分词做表语)

With the help of the teacher, the students <u>are practising the idioms.</u> (现在进行时)

4、常用作表语的现在分词有: interesting, amusing, disappointing, missing, puzzling, exciting, inspiring, following 等。现在分词表示进行与主动。
The joke is amusing 这笑话很逗人。
The problem is puzzling. 这个问题令人不解。

5、过去分词作表语表示主语所处的被动状态或完成某动作的状态。而被动语态表 示主语所承受的动作。

The village <u>is surrounded</u> by high mountains.(过去分词做表语)

The enemy <u>was surrounded</u> by the Red Army. (被动语态)

He <u>is well educated</u>.(过去分词做表语)

He <u>has been educated</u> in this college for three years. (被动语态)

常用在句中做表语的过去分词有:

used, closed, covered, interested, followed, satisfied, surrounded, done, lost, decided, prepared, saved, shut, won, completed, crowded, dressed, wasted, broken, married, unexpected等。

interest(使...感兴趣),surprise(使...吃惊),frighten(使...害怕),excite(使...兴奋),tire(使...疲劳),please(使...满意),puzzle(使...迷惑不解),satisfy(使...满意),amuse(使...娱乐),disappoint(使...失望),inspire(使...欢欣鼓舞),worry(使...忧虑)

它们的现在分词常修饰物(有时修饰人),表示主动,过去分词常修饰人,表示被 动(包括某人的 look、voice 等)。例如:

Climbing is <u>tiring</u>. 爬山很累人。 They are very tired. 他们很疲劳

After hearing the exciting news, he gave a speech in an excited voice.

三、不定式与动名词做宾语:

1、下列动词跟不定式做宾语:

want, wish, hope, expect, ask, pretend, care, decide, happen, long, offer, refuse, fail, plan, prepare, order, cause, afford, beg, manage, agree, promise 等。

2、在下列动词或动词短语后用动名词做宾语:

enjoy, finish, suggest, avoid, excuse, delay, imagine, keep, miss, appreciate, be busy, be worth, feel like, can't stand, can't help, think of, dream of, be fond of, prevent...(from), keep...from, stop...(from), protect...from, set about, be engaged in, spend...(in), succeed in, be used to, look forward to, object to, pay attention to, insist on 等。

3、在 forget, remember, stop, regret, try, mean 等动词后跟不定式与动名词意义不同, 不定式表示谓语动词之后的动作,而动名词表示的动作发生在谓语动词之前,常用一般 式 doing 代替完成式 having done.

He <u>forgot to tell</u> me to post the letter. (他忘了叫我发信。

I shall never forget finding that rare stamp on an ordinary envelope. 我永远也忘不了在 个普通信封上发现了那枚珍贵的邮票。

Remember to write to us when you get there. 到那里,记得给我们写信。

I don't <u>remember meeting</u> him. 我不记得见过他。

I <u>regret to tell</u> you that I can't go to your birth-day party. 我很遗憾告诉你我不能去参 加你的生日晚会了。

They <u>regretted agreeing to</u> the plan. 他们后悔同意这个计划。

He <u>tried to pretend</u> to share in the pleasure with his friend. 他尽力假装与朋友分享欢乐。 She <u>tried reading</u> a novel, but that couldn't make her forget her sorrow. 她试着看看小说,但也不能使她忘记伤心事。

I didn't mean to hurt you. 我没有企图伤害你。

A friend indeed means helping others for nothing in return. 真正的朋友意指不图回报地帮助别人。

4、动名词作 need, want, require, be worth 的宾语时,用主动式代替被动式。

The washing-machine needs repairing. (或用: needs to be repaired) 这台洗衣机需要修理。

The point wants referring to. 这一点要提到。

This English novel is worth reading. 这本英文小说值得一读。

The situation in Russian required studying. 俄国形式需要研究。

四、不定式与分词在句中做宾语补足语:

1、以下动词后跟不定式做宾语补足语:

ask, tell, beg, allow, want, like, hate, force, invite, persuade, advise, order, cause, encourage, wait for, call on, permit, forbid

The doctor <u>advised him to stay</u> in bed for another few days. 医生嘱咐他再卧床休息几

We <u>wish him to remain</u> and accept the post. 我们希望他留下来接受这个职位。(注意 hope 后不跟不定式做宾补。)

2、有些动词后的复合宾语用不带"to"的不定式,这些动词有: see, watch, notice, hear, feel, make, let, have 等。例如:

We noticed him enter the house.我们留意到他进了那所房子。

The boss made them work twelve hours a day. 老板让他们一天干 12 小时工作。

注意当 make、have 不做"迫使、让"讲,而做"制造、有"解时,跟带有 to 的不定式做状语。

Mother made a cake to celebrate his birthday. 妈妈做了一个蛋糕给他庆贺生日。

He had a meeting to attend. 他有个会要开。 3、下列动词后的复合宾语用分词做宾补: see, watch, notice, observe, hear, feel, make, set, have, leave, keep, find 等。用现在分词还是用过去分词做宾补,要看分词与宾语的关系。例:

We heard him singing the song when we came in. 当我们进来的时候,听见他正唱那首歌。

We have heard the song sung twice. 我们听过这首歌唱过两遍了。

五、非谓语动词做定语:

1、不定式做定语放在所修饰的名词后,表示在谓语动词之后发生的动作或过去的某一特定动作。例如:

He had no house to live in but a lot of work to do. 他没有房子住却有好多活要干。Our monitor is the first to arrive. 我们班长是第一个到的。

2、动名词与现在分词做定语的区别:

动名词做定语说明所修饰名词的用途,现在分词做定语,表示所修饰名词进行的动作。

a walking stick 拐杖(动名词做定语,意为 a stick for walking)

a sleeping car 卧铺车厢(动名词做定语,意为 a car for sleeping)

the rising sun 正在升起的太阳(现在分词做定语,意为 the sun which was rising) the changing world 变化中的世界(现在分词做定语, 意为 the world which is changing)

3、现在分词与过去分词做定语的区别:过去分词做定语表示完成或被动的动作,现在分词做定语表示主动或进行的动作。如:

a piece of disappointing news 使人失望的消息 (意同 a piece of news which disappointed us)

in the following years 在后来的几年中(意同 in the years that followed) a well dressed woman 衣着讲究的女士(意同 a woman who is dressed well) a car parked at the gate 停在门口的小汽车(意同 a car which was parked at the gate)

六、不定式与分词做状语:

1、不定式做状语,只表示目的、结果或原因:

He hurried home only to find his money stolen. 他匆忙赶到家中,发现钱被盗了。(结果状语)
 To make himself heard, he raised his voice. 为了被听清楚,他提高了嗓门。(目的状语)
 All of us are surprised to see his rapid progress. 看到他的进步,我们都很吃惊。(原因状语)
 2、分词做状语可表示时间、条件、原因、伴随、让步、方式:
 Seen from the top of the hill, the town is beautiful. 从山上看,这座城市很美。(条件

<u>Coming into the room</u>, he found his father angry. 当走进房间时,他发现父亲生气了。 (时间状语)

Being tired, they went on working. 虽然累了,但他们继续工作。(让步状语)

Having been hit by the big boy on the nose, the little boy began to cry. 由于被大孩子打了鼻子,那个小男孩哭了。(原因状语)

了鼻子,那个小男孩哭了。(原因状语)
He put a finger in his mouth, tasted it and smiled, <u>looking rather pleased</u>. 他把一个手指放进嘴里,尝了尝,笑了,看起来挺高兴。(伴随状语)

巩固训练(夯实基础)

1、	They knew her very well. They had A. grow B. grew Tom kept quiet about the accident A. so not as to B. so as not to She reached the top of the hill and	d see	n her	up from childhood.
	A. grow B. grew	C.	was growing	D. to grow
2,	Tom kept quiet about the accident		lose his job.	
	A. so not as to B. so as not to	C.	so as to not	D. not so as to
3,	She reached the top of the hill and	stop	pedon a	big rock by the side of the path
-	A. to have rested C. to rest	в.	resting	
	C. to rest	D.	rest	
4、	The next morning she found the m	an 🔪	in hed de	ead.
	A. lying B. lie Only one of these books is A. worth to read C. worth of reading	C.	lay D. 1	laying
5、	Only one of these books is	_1/		-
	A. worth to read	В.	worth being read	
	C. worth of reading	D.	worth reading	
6.	The squirrel was lucky that it just it A. catching B. to be caught	misse	ed	
	A. catching B. to be caught	C.	being caught D. t	to catch
7、	Most of the peopleto t	he pa	arty were famous so	cientists.
	Most of the people to to A. invited B. to invite	C.	being invited	D. inviting
8、	She didn't rememberhim	i bef	ore.	~ ^ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \
	A. having met B. have met	C.	to meet D. t	to having met
9、	——Good morning. Can I help yo	ou?		
	——I'd like to have this package_		, madam.	311 20
	— I'd like to have this package A. be weighed B. to be weighed	ed	C. to weigh	D. weighed
10,	There was a terrible noise		the sudden burst o	of light.
1	There was a terrible noise A. followed B. followir	ng	C. to be followed	d D. being followed
11.	The murderer was brought in, wit A. being tied B. having tied	th his	s handsl	behind.
	A. being tied B. having tied	C.	to be tied	D. tied
12,	On Saturday afternoon, Mrs. Gree	en w	ent to the market,	some bananas and
V1S1	ted her cousin.		X	
	A. bought B. buying	C.	to buy D. 1	ouy
13、	The secretary worked late into the	e nig	ht,a lon	g speech for the president.
	A. to prepare B. preparing	C.	prepared D. v	was preparing
14、	I can hardly imagine Peter		_across the Atlantic	c Ocean in five days.
	I can hardly imagine PeterA. sail B. to sail	C.	sailing D. t	to have sailed
15,	John was made the truc A. to wash B. washing	k for	a week as a punish	nment.
	A. to wash B. washing	C.	wash D. t	to be washing
16、	I would appreciatebac	k thi	s afternoon.	
	I would appreciate bac A. you to call B. you call	C.	your calling D. y	you're calling
17、	John was so sleepy that he could	hard	ly keep his eyes	

		A.	opena re	В.	to be open	ed C.	to open	ı D	. ope	ening		
	18、		a re	eply,	he decided	l to wr	ite again					
		A.	Not receiving Not having	ng .		В.	Receiv	ing not				
	10	C.	Not having	recei	ved	D.	Having	not rece	eived			
	19、	Cha	arles Babbag	ge is g	generally c	onside	redl	th	e first	computer.		
		Α.	to have inve	ented		В.	inventi	ng				
	20	С.	to invent	1022	\	Ъ.	having	invented	1			
	20、	,(an't you rea	id!	Mary said_	D	to	the notic	ce. 1		-7	
		Α.	to have inverto invent Can't you rea angrily poin angrily poin	ung	THE I	B.	and po	ını angrı	ly ntina			
	21	C.	angrify poin	iea	on a grow	D.	ana ang	grify por	nung fore	a b	iovolo ///	
	215	Nai	mer man	-	_on a crow	ueu oi rido	is, ne aiv	vays pre) D	to ride, ridii	oleyele.	
										to fide, fidil	ng	•
	221	Δ	e missing bo	ys wi R	to be play	11 inσ	nc	ai ilic iiv	D	to play		
	23.	The	playing visiting Mi	niste	r expressed	ilig I hic ca	otisfactio	n with tl	ט. he tall	ks tha	t he had enjoyed	
	hia	ctor	hara									
	1115	A	having adde	d	B. to	hba c	C	addino	г	D. added	came out in the	
	24、	The	e first text bo	ooks	f. f.	or teac	hing En	olish as a	a fore	ign language	came out in the	
	1 / 41		4							ign ranguage		
		Α.	having writt	ten		В.	to be w	ritten		T-X		
		C.	nury. having writt being writte	n		D.	written					
	25、	We	e agreed		here but s	o far s	he hasn'	t turned	up ye	t.		
		A.	having met	В.	meeting	C.	to meet	t D	to l	nave met		
	26、	/	—You were	brave	e enough to	raise	objectio	ns at the	meet	ing.		
	'''	Α.	to do	В.	to be doin	g C.	to have	done D	. hav	ing done		
	27	The	e patient was	war	ned	oil	y food a	fter the o	perat	ion.		
7		Α.	to eat not	В.	eating not	C.	not to e	eat D	. not	eating		
	28、		in t	houg	ght, he alm	ost ran	into the	car in fr	ont o	f him.		
	• •	Α.	Losting	В.	Having lo	st C.	Lost	D	. To	lose		
	29 s		—is tnis rain	coat	yours:	///						
			—No, mine is hanging	D	tnere	bening	the doc	r.	. 1			4
	20	A.	is nanging	В.	nas nung	in.	nangs	did not	inalu	ng da waman n	lovora until	
	191	2 1110	e Orympic G	ames	2,		//0 D. C.	, ala noi	i iliciu	ide women p	layers until	
			first playing	. R .	to be first	nlavec	1 C fire	et nlaved	ת ו	to be first p	laving	1
	31	Me	gaw the hir	, D. 1 flar	ite winge	prayec	1 C. III;	si piayeu	υ.	to oc mst p	iaying	
	511	Δ	saw the bird	r map	flied		flew	_ away D	flvi	ing		ŀ
	32、	I in	sisted that th	ne dia	ctionary		to be b	ought at	once	ing.	3/2	
	<i>52</i> \		refers to					d D			ベジン	
	33、		, ic						. 1010	ining		
		Ā.	Heating	В.	Heated	С.	If heati	ng D	. To	be heated		
	34、		e foreigner s					8		-7/1/		
	1		to be losing				to have	missed		151X 0		
		C.	to have lost				missed		1		6	
<	35、	Do	n't leave me		alone	at hor	ne.					
		Α.	n't leave me to stay	В.	stay	C.	staying	D	. stay	yed		
	36	Wh	natever		_must		_well.	X				
			is to be done		done			^X/\	\mathbb{R}^{2}			
			are to do, do									
			is to dobe									
	<u>)</u>		are to be do									
	37、		e officer orde									
	20									to be operat	ted on	
	4 X	W 1	th the walls	white	·	the ro	om seem	is larger.				
	301	A .		D			4 - 1.		Γ	1 1	:4	
		Α.	painting	В.	painted	C.	to be p	ainted	D.	has been pa	inted	
		A.	painting —Can I help	B. you?	painted?	C.	to be p	ainted	D.		inted	
		A.	painting	B. you?	painted?	C.	to be p	ainted ey are a	D.		inted	

		A. changing B	. changed	C.	to be changing	D.	be changed
	40、	On hearing the new A. frightened B	vs, the woman s	stoo	d there	A	. 1 6:1, 1
	<i>1</i> 1	A. frightened B	. frightening	C.	to frighten	ъ.	to be frightened
	41、	the tra	in, they decided	a to	Walt for another.	D	Being missed being in the south of the town. is being built his heart
	12	There no	. Missing	U. volle	homo	υ.	Dellig Illissed
	42、	A ic P	y ous, I had to v	vaik	HOHIE.	D	haina
	43	At present there is	. was sa new airport s	and o	weie zunermarket	υ.	in the south of the town
	751	A built R	to be built	C	heing built	D	is being built
	44、	The young man tol	ld the doctor the	at he	didn't need	υ.	his heart .
		A. having, checke	d	В.	to have, checked		
		C. having, to chec	k	D.	to have, to check		\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\
	45、	Trythe ba	ck door if nobo	dy a	nswers the front d	loor.	XIX
		A. to knock at C. and knock at We have to do som A. killing B, we p A. Time permittin C. If time is permittin With the boy A. led B The Emperor order A. to weave		B.	knocking at		Y, \)'//
		C. and knock at	2,3	D.	and knocking at		(XX), X//
	46、	We have to do som	nething to stop	wild	animals	<u></u>	··· / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /
	4.7	A. killing B	to be killed	C.	being killed	D.	to kill
	47、	, we p	lan to hold a cla	ass n	neeting.		
		A. Time permittin	g :44 - 4	B.	Time permits		-
	10	With the box	the a	υ.	the goldiers get t	o the	nagition in time
	40	A led R	leading	way,	, the soluters got the	о ше Б	was leading
	40	The Emperor order	· Icauiiig red the wonderf	G. ful ci	loth for	him	was icaulig without delay
		A to weave	B. to be wo	ven	C. to have wove	en en	D to be weaving
	50	Look at his	look. It seem	is as	if he had met a		tiger.
۸		A. frightened, frig	htening	В.	frightening, frigh	tene	d
	-	A. to weave Look at his A. frightened, frig C. frightened, frig	htened	D.	frightening, frigh	tenii	ng
	51、	, the p	layers began th	e ga	me.)	
		A. Having taken of C. After we took of	our seats	В.	Taking our seats		
		C. After we took of	our seats	D.	Being taken the s	seats	
	52	him he	efore, she didn'	t kno	ow he was her und	rle -	
				T)	TI	JIC.	
		A. Not having see	n	В.	Having not seen	J1C.	
		A. Not having see	n	B.	Having not seen		n
		A. Not having see	n	B.	Having not seen		n.
		A. Not having see	n	B.	Having not seen		n. 1 told
		A. Not having see	n	B.	Having not seen		n. n told water.
		A. Not having see	n	B.	Having not seen		n. i told water. ing boiled
	53、 54、	A. Not having see C. Not seeing many A. Having been to C. He had been to The glass of water A. boiled B. The little have seen	n times, but he m old ld is too hot. I pre	B. D. ade B. D. efer s	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil D.	agai beer	n. n told _water. ing boiled
	53 \54 \55 \	A. Not having see C. Not seeing many A. Having been to C. He had been to The glass of water A. boiled B The little boy enter A noticing B	times, but he mold ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo	B. D. ade B. C. efer s C.	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil D. ithout being noticed	agai beer hav	notice
	53 \54 \55 \	A. Not having see C. Not seeing many A. Having been to C. He had been to The glass of water A. boiled B The little boy enter A noticing B	times, but he mold ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo	B. D. ade B. C. efer s C.	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil D. ithout being noticed	agai beer hav	notice
	53 \54 \55 \	A. Not having see C. Not seeing many A. Having been to C. He had been to The glass of water A. boiled B The little boy enter A noticing B	times, but he mold ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo	B. D. ade B. C. efer s C.	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil D. ithout being noticed	agai beer hav	notice
	53、 54、 55、 56、	A. Not having see C. Not seeing many A. Having been to C. He had been to The glass of water A. boiled B The little boy enter A. noticing B We're considering A. practising spea C. to practise spea	times, but he mold ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo	B. D. ade B. C. efer s C.	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil D. ithout being noticed	agai beer hav	notice
	53、54、55、56、57、	A. Not having see C. Not seeing many A. Having been to C. He had been to The glass of water A. boiled B The little boy enter A. noticing B We're considering A. practising spea C. to practise spea the mi	times, but he mold ld ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo . noticedEng king lking exture, the teach	B. D. ade B. C. cfer s C. dish B. D. aer sl	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil D. ithout being noticed in pairs after class practising to spea to practise to spea	have been been been been been been been be	notice
	53、54、55、56、57、	A. Not having see C. Not seeing many A. Having been to C. He had been to The glass of water A. boiled B The little boy enter A. noticing B We're considering A. practising spea C. to practise speathe mi A. To see	times, but he mold ld ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo noticed Enging king ixture, the teach	B. D. ade B. C. cfer s C. clish B. D. er sl	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil D. ithout being noticed in pairs after class practising to spea to practise to spea nowed it around the More students to	havibeer D. s. uk ak he cl see	notice assroom.
	53、54、55、56、57、	A. Not having see C. Not seeing many A. Having been to C. He had been to The glass of water A. boiled B The little boy enter A. noticing B We're considering A. practising spea C. to practise speathe mi A. To see	times, but he mold ld ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo noticed Enging king ixture, the teach	B. D. ade B. C. cfer s C. clish B. D. er sl	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil D. ithout being noticed in pairs after class practising to spea to practise to spea nowed it around the More students to	havibeer D. s. uk ak he cl see	notice assroom.
	53、54、55、56、57、	A. Not having see C. Not seeing many A. Having been to C. He had been to The glass of water A. boiled B The little boy enter A. noticing B We're considering A. practising spea C. to practise speathe mi A. To see	times, but he mold ld ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo noticed Enging king ixture, the teach	B. D. ade B. C. cfer s C. clish B. D. er sl	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil D. ithout being noticed in pairs after class practising to spea to practise to spea nowed it around the More students to	havibeer D. s. uk ak he cl see	notice assroom.
'	53 54 55 56 57 58	A. Not having see C. Not seeing many A. Having been to C. He had been to The glass of water A. boiled B The little boy enter A. noticing B We're considering A. practising spea C. to practise spea the mi A. To see C. For more stude I apologize for A. not to keep B	times, but he mold ld ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo noticed Eng king sture, the teach ents to see my pron being kept	B. D. ade B. C. m w C. elish B. D. aer sl B. D. nise. C.	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil D. ithout being noticed in pairs after class practising to spea to practise to spea to practise to spea mowed it around the More students to Seen not having kept	agai beer hav D. s. ik ak he cl see	notice assroom.
'	53 54 55 56 57 58	A. Not having see C. Not seeing many A. Having been to C. He had been to The glass of water A. boiled B The little boy enter A. noticing B We're considering A. practising spea C. to practise spea the mi A. To see C. For more stude I apologize for A. not to keep B	times, but he mold ld ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo noticed Eng king sture, the teach ents to see my pron being kept	B. D. ade B. C. m w C. elish B. D. aer sl B. D. nise. C.	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil D. ithout being noticed in pairs after class practising to spea to practise to spea to practise to spea mowed it around the More students to Seen not having kept	agai beer hav D. s. ik ak he cl see	notice assroom.
'	53 54 55 56 57 58	A. Not having see C. Not seeing many A. Having been to C. He had been to The glass of water A. boiled B The little boy enter A. noticing B We're considering A. practising spea C. to practise spea the mi A. To see C. For more stude I apologize for A. not to keep B	times, but he mold ld ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo noticed Eng king sture, the teach ents to see my pron being kept	B. D. ade B. C. m w C. elish B. D. aer sl B. D. nise. C.	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil D. ithout being noticed in pairs after class practising to spea to practise to spea to practise to spea mowed it around the More students to Seen not having kept	agai beer hav D. s. ik ak he cl see	notice assroom.
	53、 54、 55、 56、 57、 58、 59、	A. Not having see C. Not seeing many A. Having been to C. He had been to The glass of water A. boiled B The little boy enter A. noticing B We're considering A. practising spea C. to practise spea the mi A. To see C. For more stude I apologize for A. not to keep B The book A. lying, belongin C. lying, belongs	times, but he mold ld ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo . noticed Eng king akture, the teach ents to see my pron . being kept on the desk_	B. D. ade B. D. efer s C. m w C. elish B. D. nise. C. B. D.	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil D. ithout being noticed in pairs after class practising to spea to practise to spea to practise to spea to moved it around the More students to Seen not having keptto her. lay, belong being lie, is belong	agai beer have have D. s. k. k. ak he cl see	assroom. having not kept
	53、 54、 55、 56、 57、 58、 59、	A. Not having see C. Not seeing many A. Having been to C. He had been to The glass of water A. boiled B The little boy enter A. noticing B We're considering A. practising spea C. to practise spea the mi A. To see C. For more stude I apologize for A. not to keep B The book A. lying, belongin C. lying, belongs	times, but he mold ld ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo . noticed Eng king akture, the teach ents to see my pron . being kept on the desk_	B. D. ade B. D. efer s C. m w C. elish B. D. nise. C. B. D.	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil D. ithout being noticed in pairs after class practising to spea to practise to spea to practise to spea to moved it around the More students to Seen not having keptto her. lay, belong being lie, is belong	agai beer have have D. s. k. k. ak he cl see	assroom. having not kept
	53、 54、 55、 56、 57、 58、 59、	A. Not having see C. Not seeing many A. Having been to C. He had been to The glass of water A. boiled B The little boy enter A. noticing B We're considering A. practising spea C. to practise spea the mi A. To see C. For more stude I apologize for A. not to keep B The book A. lying, belongin C. lying, belongs, Mary A. Being ill B much	times, but he mold ld ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo . noticed Eng king aking axture, the teach ents to see my pron . being kept on the desk_graph with the stay at 1 to be ill English trouble	B. D. hade B. C. m w C. clish B. D. homse. C. B. D. hom C. cld hi	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil D. ithout being noticed in pairs after class practising to spea to practise to spea to practise to spea mowed it around the More students to Seen not having kept to her. lay, belong being lie, is belong to look after her Her mother was it m a lot.	agai beer have have D. s. k. k. ak he cl see	notice assroom.
	53、 54、 55、 56、 57、 58、 59、	A. Not having see C. Not seeing many A. Having been to C. He had been to The glass of water A. boiled B The little boy enter A. noticing B We're considering A. practising spea C. to practise spea the mi A. To see C. For more stude I apologize for A. not to keep B The book A. lying, belongin C. lying, belongs, Mary A. Being ill B much	times, but he mold ld ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo . noticed Eng king aking axture, the teach ents to see my pron . being kept on the desk_graph with the desk_graph is to be ill English trouble	B. D. hade B. C. m w C. clish B. D. homse. C. B. D. hom C. cld hi	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil D. ithout being noticed in pairs after class practising to spea to practise to spea to practise to spea mowed it around the More students to Seen not having kept to her. lay, belong being lie, is belong to look after her Her mother was it m a lot.	agai beer have have D. s. k. k. ak he cl see	assroom. having not kept
	53、 54、 55、 56、 57、 58、 60、 61、	A. Not having see C. Not seeing	times, but he mold ld ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo noticedEng king ixture, the teach ents to seemy pron being kepton the desk_g ld	B. D. adde B. D. effer s C. mr w C. effish B. D. effer sl. B. Eff	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil	agai beer hav D. s. k ak he cl see	assroom. having not kept D. Her mother being ill
	53、 54、 55、 56、 57、 58、 60、 61、	A. Not having see C. Not seeing	times, but he mold ld ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo noticedEng king ixture, the teach ents to seemy pron being kepton the desk_g ld	B. D. adde B. D. effer s C. mr w C. effish B. D. effer sl. B. Eff	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil	agai beer hav D. s. k ak he cl see	assroom. having not kept D. Her mother being ill
	53、 54、 55、 56、 57、 58、 60、 61、	A. Not having see C. Not seeing many A. Having been to C. He had been to The glass of water A. boiled B The little boy enter A. noticing B We're considering A. practising spea C. to practise spea the mi A. To see C. For more stude I apologize for A. not to keep B The book A. lying, belongin C. lying, belongs, Mary A. Being ill B much	times, but he mold ld ld is too hot. I pre boiling red the classroo noticedEng king ixture, the teach ents to seemy pron being kepton the desk_g ld	B. D. adde B. D. effer s C. mr w C. effish B. D. effer sl. B. Eff	Having not seen Not being seen the same mistake Although he had Having told some cold to boil	agai beer hav D. s. k ak he cl see	assroom. having not kept D. Her mother being ill

63、	He got the first and	won the prize	as_			•	
	A. expected He stood there with	B. expectin	g	C. to be expected	ed	D. expect	
64,	He stood there with	his eyes		me.	\rightarrow	•	
	A. fixing B.	fixing on		C. fixed to		D. fixed on	
65,	Mother warned him	afte	r drı	nkıng.			
	A. to never drive		В.	never to drive			
	C. never driving	-1.	D.	never drive			
66,	A. to never drive C. never driving I remember	something li	ke tl	nat.			
	A. that he say	L'K	В.	him to say			
	C. his saying	-!//	D.	him having said			
67、	A. that he say C. his saying Did you smell some	thing	?	\mathcal{E}			
	A larrout D	to larrage		to lea lexamina	D.	burning	
68,	Because of air pollu	tion, this city	is no	o longer		\mathcal{S}	
	A. a good place to l	ive in	В.	a good place for	livin	g in	
	C. a good place to 1	ive	D.	a good place to b	e liv	ed in	\propto
69、	A. burnt B. Because of air pollu A. a good place to I C. a good place to I Let the day A. to be remembered C. be remembered			\mathcal{E} 1			21
	A. to be remembere	d	В.	remembered			
	C. be remembered		D.	remember			
70,	His parents A. dead B.	, the orphan	is no	ow taken care of b	y th	e villagers.	
	A. dead B.	dying	C.	have died	Ď.	having died	
71.	Would you be	to do me	e a fa	avour?			
	Would you beA. as good as B.	so good as	C.	enough good	D.	good enough	as
72、	He had us	all through t	he p	arty.			
	He had usA. laughing B.	to laugh	C.	laugh D.	laug	ghed	
73、	The nurse suggested	the old man_		, for he had a	a lon	g time to wai	t.
	The nurse suggested A. to sit down B.	sit down	C.	would sit down	D.	sat down	
74、	Those who have que	estions		_, raise your hand	s.		
	A. to sit down B. Those who have que A. asked B. This room is used A. to store B. We can't keep our e A. shut B. I don't feel like	ask	C.	asking	D.	to ask	
75、	This room is used	foo	d. 🔪	でするこ			
	A. to store B.	storing	C.	to storing	D.	stored	
76、	We can't keep our e	yes	to a	ill this.			
	A. shut B.	shutting	C.	to shut	D.	shutted	
77、	I don't feel like	to the ci	nem	a.			
	A. go B.	going	C.	gone	D.	to go	
78、	you the	truth, I don't	like	the design he offe	ered.		
	A. Tell B.	Told	C.	Telling	D.	To tell	
79、	at the st	ation, they for	und	the train	_•		
	A. Arriving, going	NW VIV	В.	Arrived, go			7
	C. Arriving, gone	W.	D.	Arrived, gone		•	
80,	What he said made u	ıs	_•			1	
	A. shut B. I don't feel like A. go B. you the A. Tell B. at the st A. Arriving, going C. Arriving, gone What he said made to A. to surprise B.	surprise	C.	surprising	D.	surprised	-

专题十五 状语从句

一、定义: 状语在句子中修饰动词、形容词、副词等。状语是用来说明谓语动作发生的时间、地点、原因、目的、结果、条件、方式、比较、让步、伴随等。 当状语由一个句子来充当时,这个主从复合句就是状语从句。

I get up <u>at 7 o'clock</u>.(时间状语) I get up <u>when it is 7 o'clock</u>.(时间状语从句)

- __ He plays football <u>at school</u>.(地点状语) — He plays football <u>where he studies</u>(地点状语从句)
- She was happy to hear the news. (原因状语)
 She was happy because she heard the news. (原因状语从句)
- They get up early to catch up the bus. (目的状语)
 They get up early so that they can catch up the bus. (目的状语从句)
- He is too young <u>to go to school</u>. (结果状语) He is so yon<u>g that he can't go to school</u>. (结果状语从句)

.

常见的状语从句:时间状语从句、条件状语从句、地点状语从句、原因状语从句、目的 状语从句、结果状语从句、让步状语从句、比较状语从句、方式状语从句。

时间状语从句

时间状语从句遵循"主将从现"原则

常用引导词 when, as ,while, before, after, till, until, as soon as, the moment, the minute, the first time.... (名词性短语)

在时间状语从句中,要注意时态一致。根据意义和主从句之间的时间关系,可分类一、表示同时性,即主从句的谓语动作同时发生或几乎同时发生。常见引导词:when(当...时),while(当...时),as soon as(一...就),once(一旦...)等

1、Strike while the iron is hot. 趁热打铁

2、As/When I came home,I met an old schoolmate of mine. 当我回家的时候,我遇见了一个老同学。

- 3. Once you see him, you will never forget him.
- 一旦你见到他,你就不会忘记。
- 4. I will call you as soon as I get home.

我一到家就给你打电话

when, while, as 区别

- 1.When 引导的从句的谓语动词可以是延续性动词,也可以是非延续性动词(瞬间性动词)
- (1) When she came in,I stopped eating.

当她进来的时候,我停止了吃饭(came 瞬间性动词)

(2) When I lived in the city, I used to go to school by bus. 当我居住在这座城市的时候,我过去常常走路去上学(lived 延续性动词)

2.While 引导从句的谓语动词必须是延续的,并强调主句和从句两个动作同时发生,多用于过去进行时

(1) While my wife was watching TV,I was reading the newspaper. 当我妻子在看电视的时候,我在读报纸 (watching 延续性动词,主从句都是过去进行时)

(2) She was reading while I was singing. 当我在唱歌时,她在读书 (reading 延续性动词,主从句都是过去进行时)

- 3. as 表示一边...一边...,引导的从句的谓语动词是延续性的,一般用于主句和从句动作同时发生, as 也可表示一先一后
 - (1) We always sing as we walk.(两个动作同时发生) 我们总是边走边唱。
 - (2) As we were going out,it began to snow. (两个动作一先一后) 当我们出门时,开始下雪了
- (3) I saw her as I was shopping(两个动作同时发生) 当我购物时,我看到了她
- 二、表示先、或者后,即主句的谓语动作发生在从句之前或之后。常见的引导词: after (在...之后), before (在...之前)
- 1. After the children had gone to bed, she began to prepare her lessons. 在孩子们睡觉之后,她开始准备她的课了。

(从句的动作发生在主句之前,所以从句用了过去完成时)

2. He had learned English for three years before he went to London. 在他去伦敦之前,他已经学了三年的英语了。

(主句的动作发生在从句之前,所以主句用了过去完成时)

3. He ran off before I could stop him. 在我能阻止他之前他跑掉了。

(主句和从句的动作几乎同时发生, 时态一致)

三、表示持续性或瞬间性。常见引导词: since(自从),ever since (自从),until (直到……才), till(直到……才)

1.He has studied very hard since he came to our school.

自从他来到这个学校他就学习很努力

(主句中 studied 延续性的动作,从句中 came 瞬间性动作)

2.I have known him ever since he was a child.

自从他是个小孩的时候我就认识他了。

(主句中 known 延续性的动作,从句中 was 瞬间性动作)

3.He watched TV untill/till his mother came back.

他看电视直到他的妈妈回来。

(主句中 watched 延续性的动作,从句中 came 瞬间性动作)

till 和 until 区别

- 1.一般情况下两者可以互换,但在强调句型中多用 until。
- 2.till 不可以用于句首, until 可用于句首
- 3.用于肯定句中主句的动词只能是延续性的动词,用于否定句中,主句的动词可以是延续性动词也可以是非延续性动词

Since 引导的时间抓状语从句的谓语动词,可以是延续性的也可以是非延续性的。一般情况下从句谓语动词是一般过去时,主句用现在完成时。

但是在 it is +时间+since 从句的句型中,从句用一般过去时.此时从句中的动词分两种情况

- (1) It is +时间+since+非延续性动词,译为: 自从从句动作发生以来已经多长时间了
- (2) It is +时间+since+延续性动词,译为:自从从句动作结束已经多长时间了

Eg:

It is 4 years since I came here

我来这已经四年了(came 非延续性动词)

It is 4 years since I lived here

我不在这住已经4年了(lived 延续性动词)

原因状语从句

引导原因状语从句的连词: because (因为), as (由于), since (既然) now that (既然), for (因为,引导的是并列句)

1. because 表示直接的原因。语气最强 Why 提问的句子必须用 because 回答

because 的从句通常放在主句之后 because 不能和 so 连用 because+从句。because of+名词短语

I went to school late because I got up late. 我上学迟到了是因为我起床晚了。

Why didn't he come here?Because he was ill. 他为什么没来,因为他生病了

2. as"因为",语气较弱,一般放在主句前,中间用逗号隔开,表示的是明显的原因

As he was not well,I decided to go there alone. 因为他身体不好,我决定独自去那

As it was raining hard,we had to stay at home. 因为雨下的很大,我们不得不待在家

3、since/ now that"既然",一般放在主句前,中间用逗号隔开,表示的是明显的原因或 众所周知的事实

Since/ Now that you feel ill, you'd better not go to work. 既然你觉得不舒服,你最好不要去上班了。

Since/Now that this way doesn't work,let's try another. 既然这种方式行不通,那咱们就尝试另一种。

4.for 的用法: for 是并列连词,引出的原因较间接,似乎是事后所想到的补充解释的理由,只陈述一般推断的理由,不一定表示产生结果的必然原因。只能放在主句之后,不能放在句首,常用逗号把它和前面的分句隔开。对主句补充说明理由或推断原因。

It rained last night, for the ground is wet. 昨天晚上下雨了,因为地是湿的。

She must have gone out early, for she had not come for breakfast. 她一定出去的很早,因为她没来吃早饭。

目的状语从句

引导目的状语从句的连接词有:so that (以便), in order that (为了), in case (以防)。 从句中常常使用一些情态动词 can,could,may,might,should,will,would

1. He got up early so that he can catch up with the bus.

=He got up early to catch up the bus. 他早起以便能赶上公交车。

- 2. He was working hard in order that he can pass the examination. =He was working hard to pass the examination. 他努力学习是为了能通过考试。
- 3. You need go home in case your family need you. 你应该回家以防你的家人需要你。

结果状语从句

引导结果状语从句的连接词: so...that(如此...以至于),such...that(如此...以至于)So+形容词/副词+that+从句Such+形容词+名词+that+从句So+形容词+a/an+可数名词单数+that+从句

- 1. He runs so fast that nobody can catch up with him. 他跑的如此的快以至于没人能够追上他。
- 2. He is so young that he can't go to school. =He is such a young boy that he can't go to school. =He is so young a boy that he can't go to school. 他太小了以至于不能去上学

但是如果名词前有 many/much/little/few 修饰时,要用 so 不能用 such

He has so much homework that he can't watch TV. 他有如此多的作业,以至于他没时间看电视

He has so few friends that he often feels lonely. 他的朋友是如此的少,以至于他经常感到很孤独

条件转语从句

引导条件状语从句的连接词: if (如果), unless (除非), as long as (只要)。条件状语从句要: 主将从现,主情从现,主祈从现。

- 1. If it doesn't rain tomorrow, we will go hiking. 如果明天不下雨,我们就去远足(主将从现)
- 2. If you work harder, you can get higher grades. 如果你更加努力学习,你就能获得更高的分数。

(主情从现)

- 3. Don't come out unless it's clear. 除非天气晴朗了,不要出来(主祈从现)
- 4. I will call you as long as I get there. 只要我到那了,就给你打电话 (主将从现)

比较状语从句

比较状语从句的连接词: than(比), as...as(与...一样),详见形容词比较级

让步状语从句

引导让步状语从句的连接词: although, though, while, as, even if, even though, whether...or, no matter+疑问词, 疑问词+ever。一般翻译为: 尽管...,即使..., 无论...

1.though 和 although 表示虽然,尽管,在一般情况下可以互换,在口语中,though 比较常用,although 比 though 正式,二者都可以和 yet,still 连用,但是不能和 but 连用。

Althoug/Though he was tired,he kept on working. 尽管他很累,但是他仍然继续工作

1. as 引导的让步状语从句要部分倒装,被倒装的部分可以是表语,状语或动词原形

Child as he is ,he is very brave. 尽管是个孩子,他仍然很勇敢。

Hard as he worked,he didn't suceed. 尽管他努力了,但是还是没有成功。

2. even if/even though 表示即使,纵使,含有假设含义,两者通常可以互换

We will go hiking even if/though the weather is bad. 尽管天气不好,我们仍然要去远足

3. whether...or 无论是否,不管是...还是...由这一个复合连词引导的让步状语从句旨在说明正反两方面的可能性都不会影响主句的意向或结果

You have to finish you homework whether you are free or busy. 不管你忙不忙,你都必须完成作业。

Whether you believe it or not, it's true.

不管你信不信,它都是真的。

4. "no matter+疑问词"或"疑问词-ever"的含义为"......都......; 不管......都......"它们引导的让步状语从句可以互换

No matter what happened,he would not mind. =Whatever happened ,he would not mind. 无论发生什么他都不不在意

No matter who you are ,you must follow the rules. =Whoever you are ,you must follow the rules. 无论你是谁,都必须遵守规则

地点状语从句

引导地点状语从句的连接词: where, wherever

1.We should camp where we can get water. 我们应该在能找到水的地方露营

2.You can go wherever you like. 你可以去你想去的任何地方。

注意 where 也可以引导定语从句。Where 引导的状语从句和定语从句区别就看前面有没有先行词。

1.Go back where you come from. 你从哪来回哪儿去 (where 引导的地点状语从句)

2.Go back to the village where you come from. 回到你来的那个村子里 (where 引导的定语从句,其前面有先行词 village)

以下是用图表方式来讲解状语从句 知识要点: 状语从句是副词性从句,它在句子中担任状语,修饰主句的动词、形容词或副词。根据修饰的方面,状语从句可以分为以下九种。
1、时间状语从句
2、地点状语从句
3、原因状语从句
4、目的状语从句
5、结果状语从句
6、条件状语从句
7、方式状语从句
8、让步状语从句
9、比较状语从句
1、时间状语从句
1、时间状语从句

" _3		(M/// -)		
	种类	从属连 词	例 句	说明
	10	when	When I came into the room, he was writing a letter. 当我进屋时,他正在写信。	when 指的是"某一具体的时间"。
	时	wheneve r	free.	whenever 指的是"在任何一个不具体的时间"。
	间状		I was walking along the street when suddenly someone patted me on the shoulder from behind. 我正在街上走着,这时忽然有人从后面拍我的肩膀。	般位于句末。
	语	while	While it was raining, they went out. 天下雨的时候,他们出去了。 I stayed while he was away. 他不在的时候我在。	while 指"在某一段时间里","在…期间",while 引导的动作必须是持续性的。
	从	as	He hurried home, looking behind as he went. 他赶快回家,不时地一边走一边向后看。	强调主句和从句的 动作同时发生。
	句	before	Be a pupil before you become a teacher. 先做学生,再做先生。	before 译为在…之前
		after	He arrived after the game started. 比赛开始后,他到了。	X-X-X
	*	till	We waited till (until)he came back . 我们一直等到他回来。	如主句动词是持续性动作,常用肯定式,表示"直到…为此"
1	种类	从属连句	例 句	说明
		until	She didn't stop working until eleven o'clock . 她到 11 点钟才停止工作。 Until he had passed out of sight, she	如主句动词是瞬间 动词,常用否定式, 表示"直… 才""在…以前不",
	时		stood there. 她站在那里看着,直到看不见他的身 影。	从句放在句盲表示 强调,一般用 until
	间	since	Great changes have taken place in China since 1978. 自从 1978 年以来中国发生了巨大的	
	状	as soon as	变化。 As soon as I arrive in Shanghai, I'll	在主句之后则不必 用标点符号。

				•	
			write to you.我一到上海就给你写信。		
	语	hardlyw	I had hardly got home when it began to	hardlywhen 和 no	
		hen	rain.	soonerthan 的意	√ ∧
	从		我刚一到家,就下雨了。=Hardly had l	【义相当士 as soon	(5)
		no	got home when it began to rain.	as,但只表示过去发	J_ \\\
	句		No sooner had we got to the station than	生的事情,主句为	V13_
		han	the train left.	过去完成时,从句	WKIC
			我们刚到车站,火车就走了。	为过去时,如 hardly	-7/1/
			Hardly had we begun when we were	或 no sooner 位于句	//S/X 0()
			told to stop. 升 的 III	首时语气强,而且	
			我们刚开始就被叫停。	主句的谓语要用部	
			Example 1 to valled by heat I get	分倒装。	
		every	Every time I travelled by boat, I got seasick.	在时间状语从句 中,不能用将来时	
		time, by the time,	我每次乘船都晕船。	或过去将来时,而	
		the time,	The moment I heard the song, I felt	要用现在时或过去	
	4	moment	cheerful.	时代替将来时。	
	5//	等	我一听到这首歌,就感到很愉快。	h1 7 El 3/1 3/2 h1 °	
.		,	Next time you come you'll see him.		
		, 900	Next time you come ,you'll see him. 下次你来的时候,就会见到他。	_X	
	Y	where	Where there is a will, there is a way.	where 与 wherever	
	地		有志者,事竟成。	意义基本相同,但后者语气较强,多	
.	点	wherever	Where there is water there is life.	后者语气较强,多	
	地点状		哪里有水,哪里就有生命。	用于书面语。	
	语从		You are free to go wherever you like. 你可以随意到你喜欢的任何地方去。		
	从		你可以随意到你喜欢的任何地方去。		
	句		Wherever you go, you must obey the	•	
			law.		
	175		无论你去哪都要遵守法律。		
	原	because	I came back late yesterday because I	because 用来回答	
	因		was on duty.	why 的问题,语气	
	状		昨天我回来晚了,因为我值班。	最强一般放在主句	-X
	計.	gin oo	Singa ayanyan ia hana lat'a haain aya	之口 since 丰三町蚜武会	CT
	语从	since	Since everyone is here, let's begin our	since 表示既然或全	-!//>
	分句		meeting. 既然大家都到了,我们开始开会。	己知的理由,稍加分 析即可表明的原因,	(1/4)
	ار⊢			多放句首	1111,000
L					W K V
ſ	种类	ミ	例 句	说明	0
	ロン	一句			(2)
ŀ			As he didn't know much English, he	从句常放在句首,说	73
	77	/ X	looked up the word in the dictionary.	明原因, 主句说明结	\mathcal{O}
	原	W.	由于他英语懂得不多,他在字典中查	果,常用于口语中。)
	因		阅这个单词。	1121200	

	种类	从属连 句	例 句	说明
_Y	原因	as	As he didn't know much English, he looked up the word in the dictionary . 由于他英语懂得不多,他在字典中查阅这个单词。	从句常放在句首,说明原因,主句说明结果,常用于口语中。
** + 600		seeing that	we can start our journey. 鉴于天气已经晴朗,我们可以启程了。	seeing (that), now that 和 since, as 意 义相似,他们都有 "鉴于某个事实"的 意思, that 可以省去。
5000		that	I shall write down your telephone number that I may not forget.	目的状语从句中常 用情态动词 may
	目的	so that	我要把你的电话号码记下来,以免忘记。 We'll tell you the truth so that you can	(could),should 等放

	状语		judge for yourself.	往放在主句之后,主	
	语		我把真实情况告诉你, 使你能自己作	从句之间不用任何	
	从	in order	出判断。	标点符号	4
	句	that	They worked harder than usual in		(~)
			order that they could finish the work		XX
			ahead of time.		7.5 7
		lest = for	他们比往常更加努力工作, 为了能提		X
			前完成工作。		-/^ /\ _C
			Put on more clothes lest (= for fear		,7//
			that) you should catch cold.		111111111111111111111111111111111111111
			多穿点衣服,以免患感冒。		
		so that	We turned up the radio, so that	so that 前有逗号为结	(1,44)
		1	everyone heard the news.	果状语从句。	
	结	(5)	我们把收音机的音量放大,大家都听	sothat 的 so 后面跟	12.7//
		1-V	到了新闻。	形容词或副词。	
	果	sothat	He was so excited that he couldn't say		N.//Y
		KIC	a word.		
	- 状		他十分激动,以致一句话都说不出	l N	
			来。		▼
		suchth	He gave such important reasons that he	suchthat 的 such 后	
	语	at	was excused.他说出了这么重要的理		
			由,得到大家的谅解。	是单数就要用 such a	
	从		It is such an interesting novel that all	/anthat 处可以转	
	—		of us want to read it.	换用 sothat,语气	
	句		It is so interesting a novel that all of us	牧独	
			want to read it.		
			这是一本十分有意思的书,大家都想		
ļ			看。		
	Ŧritr			I →∸ □ □ □	
	种	从属连句	例	说 明	
_	种类			, - , ,	
-		从属连句 if	Difficulties are nothing if we are not	unless 从句的谓语只	
_			Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them.	unless 从句的谓语只 能用肯定式。unless	W-X
-			Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什	unless 从句的谓语只能用肯定式。unless和 ifnot 同义,	
_	条	if	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。	unless 从句的谓语只 能用肯定式。unless 和 ifnot 同义, unless 是书面语,	-17-1
-	条		Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains	unless 从句的谓语只能用肯定式。unless和 ifnot 同义,unless是书面语,ifnot 是口语,通常	
-	条件	if	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains	unless 从句的谓语只能用肯定式。unless和 ifnot 同义,unless是书面语,ifnot 是口语,通常二者可以换用。	
-	条	if	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。	unless 从句的谓语只能用肯定式。unless和 ifnot 同义,unless是书面语,ifnot 是口语,通常二者可以换用。	
	条件状	if	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。 = We shall go there tomorrow if it	unless 从句的谓语只能用肯定式。unless和 ifnot 同义,unless是书面语,ifnot 是口语,通常二者可以换用。	
-	条件状语	if unless	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。	unless 从句的谓语只能用肯定式。unless和 ifnot 同义,unless是书面语,ifnot 是口语,通常二者可以换用。条件状语从句中态一般要用现在时或之去时代替一般将来	
-	条件状语从	if unless as/so long	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。 = We shall go there tomorrow if it doesn't rain. So/As long as you work hard, you will succeed.	unless 从句的谓语只能用肯定式。unless和 ifnot 同义,unless是书面语,ifnot 是口语,通常二者可以换用。条件状语从句中的谓语动词的时态过	
-	条件状语从	if unless as/so long as in case	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。 = We shall go there tomorrow if it doesn't rain. So/As long as you work hard, you will succeed. 只要你努力工作,你就一定能成功。	unless 从句的谓语只能用肯定式。unless和 ifnot 同义,unless是书面语,ifnot 是口语,通常二者可以换用。条件状语从句中态一般要用现在时或之去时代替一般将来	
	条件状语从	if unless as/so long	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。 = We shall go there tomorrow if it doesn't rain. So/As long as you work hard, you will succeed. 只要你努力工作,你就一定能成功。In case I forget, please remind me	unless 从句的谓语只能用肯定式。unless和 ifnot 同义,unless是书面语,ifnot 是口语,通常二者可以换用。条件状语从句中态一般要用现在时或之去时代替一般将来	
	条件状语从	if unless as/so long as in case	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。 = We shall go there tomorrow if it doesn't rain. So/As long as you work hard, you will succeed. 只要你努力工作,你就一定能成功。In case I forget, please remind me about it.	unless 从句的谓语只能用肯定式。unless和 ifnot 同义,unless是书面语,ifnot 是口语,通常二者可以换用。条件状语从句中态一般要用现在时或之去时代替一般将来	
	条件状语从	if unless as/so long as in case	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。 = We shall go there tomorrow if it doesn't rain. So/As long as you work hard, you will succeed. 只要你努力工作,你就一定能成功。In case I forget, please remind me about it. 万一我忘了,请提醒我一下。	unless 从句的谓语只能用肯定式。unless和 ifnot 同义,unless是书面语,ifnot 是口语,通常二者可以换用。条件状语从句中态一般要用现在时或之去时代替一般将来	
	条件状语从	if unless as/so long as in case	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。 = We shall go there tomorrow if it doesn't rain. So/As long as you work hard, you will succeed. 只要你努力工作,你就一定能成功。In case I forget, please remind me about it. 万一我忘了,请提醒我一下。 So far as I know, the book will be	unless 从句的谓语只能用肯定式。unless和 ifnot 同义,unless是书面语,ifnot 是口语,通常二者可以换用。条件状语从句中态一般要用现在时或之去时代替一般将来	
	条件状语从	if unless as/so long as in case	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。 = We shall go there tomorrow if it doesn't rain. So/As long as you work hard, you will succeed. 只要你努力工作,你就一定能成功。In case I forget, please remind me about it. 万一我忘了,请提醒我一下。 So far as I know, the book will be published next month.	unless 从句的谓语只能用肯定式。unless和 ifnot 同义,unless是书面语,ifnot 是口语,通常二者可以换用。条件状语从句中态一般要用现在时或之去时代替一般将来	
	条件状语从	if unless as/so long as in case	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。 = We shall go there tomorrow if it doesn't rain. So/As long as you work hard, you will succeed. 只要你努力工作,你就一定能成功。In case I forget, please remind me about it. 万一我忘了,请提醒我一下。 So far as I know, the book will be	unless 从句的谓语只能用肯定式。unless和 ifnot 同义,unless是书面语,ifnot 是口语,通常二者可以换用。条件状语从句中态一般要用现在时或之去时代替一般将来	
	条件状语从句	if unless as/so long as in case so far as	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。 = We shall go there tomorrow if it doesn't rain. So/As long as you work hard, you will succeed. 只要你努力工作,你就一定能成功。In case I forget, please remind me about it. 万一我忘了,请提醒我一下。 So far as I know, the book will be published next month. 据我所知,那本书下月出版。	unless 从句话。unless 和 ifnot 同义,unless 是书面语,道:not 是口语,通常not 是口语,通常二者件状语的时态或条件。的谓语用中态过来的谓语用。	
	条件状语从句	if unless as/so long as in case	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。 = We shall go there tomorrow if it doesn't rain. So/As long as you work hard, you will succeed. 只要你努力工作,你就一定能成功。In case I forget, please remind me about it. 万一我忘了,请提醒我一下。So far as I know, the book will be published next month. 据我所知,那本书下月出版。 Draw a cat as I taught you.	unless 从句话。unless 和 ifnot 同义,unless 是书口语,道:not 是口语,通常上,可以是一个人,是一个人,是一个人,这一个人,这一个人,这一个人,这一个人,这一个人,这一个人,这一个人,这	
	条件状语从句	if unless as/so long as in case so far as	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。 = We shall go there tomorrow if it doesn't rain. So/As long as you work hard, you will succeed. 只要你努力工作,你就一定能成功。In case I forget, please remind me about it. 万一我忘了,请提醒我一下。So far as I know, the book will be published next month. 据我所知,那本书下月出版。 Draw a cat as I taught you. 按照我教你的画一只猫。	unless 从句式。unless 和 ifnot 同义,unless 是书口语,说话not 是口语,说话not 是如语,通常一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个	
	条件状语从句 方	if unless as/so long as in case so far as	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。 = We shall go there tomorrow if it doesn't rain. So/As long as you work hard, you will succeed. 只要你努力工作,你就一定能成功。In case I forget, please remind me about it. 万一我忘了,请提醒我一下。So far as I know, the book will be published next month. 据我所知,那本书下月出版。 Draw a cat as I taught you. 按照我教你的画一只猫。Do as you are told.	unless 从句式。unless 和 ifnot 同义,unless 是书口语,说话not 是印语,通常二者件对语,由于一个人,由于一个人,是一个人,是一个人,是一个人,是一个人,是一个人,是一个人,是一个人,是	
	条件状语从句 方式	if unless as/so long as in case so far as	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。 = We shall go there tomorrow if it doesn't rain. So/As long as you work hard, you will succeed. 只要你努力工作,你就一定能成功。In case I forget, please remind me about it. 万一我忘了,请提醒我一下。 So far as I know, the book will be published next month. 据我所知,那本书下月出版。 Draw a cat as I taught you. 按照我教你的画一只猫。 Do as you are told. 按照人家告诉你做的去做。	unless 从句式。unless 和 ifnot 同文语,则是一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个一个	
	条件状语从句 方式:	if unless as/so long as in case so far as as if	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。 = We shall go there tomorrow if it doesn't rain. So/As long as you work hard, you will succeed. 只要你努力工作,你就一定能成功。In case I forget, please remind me about it. 万一我忘了,请提醒我一下。So far as I know, the book will be published next month. 据我所知,那本书下月出版。 Draw a cat as I taught you. 按照我教你的画一只猫。Do as you are told. 按照人家告诉你做的去做。She looks as if she is ill.	unless 从句式。unless 和 ifnot 同面语,则是一个的语言,则是一个的话,则是一个的话,是一个的话,可可谓是一个的话,是一个的话,是一个的话,是一个的话,是一个的话,是一个的话,是一个的话,是一个的话,就是一个话,我们就是一个的话,就是一个话,我们就是一个的话,我们就是一个话,我们就是我们就是一个话,我们就是我们就是一个话,我们就是一个话,我们就是我们就是一个话,我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是	
	条件状语从句 方式:	if unless as/so long as in case so far as	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。 = We shall go there tomorrow if it doesn't rain. So/As long as you work hard, you will succeed. 只要你努力工作,你就一定能成功。In case I forget, please remind me about it. 万一我忘了,请提醒我一下。So far as I know, the book will be published next month. 据我所知,那本书下月出版。 Draw a cat as I taught you. 按照我教你的画一只猫。 Do as you are told. 按照人家告诉你做的去做。 She looks as if she is ill. 看上去她好象是生病了。	unless 和 ifnot 同面语,则如此是是一个的。如果是一个的,如果是一个的。如果是一个的,如果是一个的。如果是一个的,如果是一个的。如果是一个的,我们就是一个的,我们就是一个的,我们就是一个的,我们就是一个的,我们就是一个的,我们就是一个的,我们就是一个的,我们就是一个的,我们就是一个的,我们就是一个的,我们就是一个的,我们就是一个的,我们就是一个的,我们就是一个,我们就是我们就是一个,我们就是一个,我们就是一个,我们就是一个,我们就是一个,我们就是一个,我们就是一个,我们就是一个,我们就是一个,我们就是一个,我们就是一个,我们就是一个,我们就是一个,我们就是一个,我们就是一个,我们就是一个,我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是	
	条件状语从句 方式:	if unless as/so long as in case so far as as if	Difficulties are nothing if we are not afraid of them. 如果我们不怕困难,困难就算不了什么了。 We shall go there tomorrow unless it rains. 除非下雨,我们明天就去那里。 = We shall go there tomorrow if it doesn't rain. So/As long as you work hard, you will succeed. 只要你努力工作,你就一定能成功。In case I forget, please remind me about it. 万一我忘了,请提醒我一下。So far as I know, the book will be published next month. 据我所知,那本书下月出版。 Draw a cat as I taught you. 按照我教你的画一只猫。Do as you are told. 按照人家告诉你做的去做。She looks as if she is ill.	unless 从句式。unless 和 ifnot 同面语,则是一个的语言,则是一个的话,则是一个的话,是一个的话,可可谓是一个的话,是一个的话,是一个的话,是一个的话,是一个的话,是一个的话,是一个的话,是一个的话,就是一个话,我们就是一个的话,就是一个话,我们就是一个的话,我们就是一个话,我们就是我们就是一个话,我们就是我们就是一个话,我们就是一个话,我们就是我们就是一个话,我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是我们就是	

从		他的行动就好象什么也没有发生。 They treat the black boy as if (though)	•
句		he were an animal. 他们对待这黑孩子仿佛他是一头牲口。	
让	though	Although (Though) he was over sixty, (yet) he began to learn French.	在句子中一般用了"虽然"就不能再用
步	although	虽然他六十多岁了,但仍开始学习法语。 We were not tired though (although)	一但是"(but)但可以 与 yet 或 still 连用。 though / although 意
状	attnough	we had worked all day. 虽然我们干了一天活,但并不累。	义相同,用法基本一 样,前者通俗,口语
语	(4)		化,后者正式多放主 句的前面。
从	even if even	I'll go even if (though) it rains tomorrow.	even if 和 even though 的意思为"即
句	though	即使明天下雨,我也要去。	使""纵使"有退一步设想的意味,多用于 书面语中。
	7.95	I	1.

种类	从属连 词	例	说明
	as	Child as he is , he knows a lot . 虽然他是一个孩子,但他懂得很多。 Cold as it is, (= Though it is cold,)the	as 引出的状语从句 多用于书面语,它比 用
步		children play outdoors. 虽然天气冷,但孩子们仍在户外玩。	though 或 although 引导的从句,语气强, 更有表现力,从句常
			放在句首,语序部分 倒装。
状	no matter (who,	Do it no matter what others say. 不管别人怎么说,尽管干。 No matter how busy he was, he studied	
语	what when, where	English every day. 不管他多忙,他都每天坚持学习英语。	本一 样,no matter引导的从 句可是以位于主句
从	which, how)	No matter who takes up the matter for me ,I shall be very grateful. 不管谁为我处理这件事,我都将非常	前或主句后。
句	wh— ever (whateve	感激。 Whatever happens / may happen, we shall not lose heart. 无论发生什么,我们都不要失去信	wh一ever 从句中的 动词有时可以和 may 连用。判断 wh
	r whoever	心。 Whoever comes, he will be welcome. 无论谁来,都会受到欢迎。	一ever 引导的是状语从句还是名词性从句的一点是,名词性从句,主句中一定
5	whichev er however		有一个成分要在从 句担任,一般从句与 主句之间没有逗号。
)		不可将 no matter 与 wh—ever 连用
比	asas	Mary is as old as my sister. 玛利和我姐姐一样大。	连词表示同程度级 的比较,肯定可用
较	as	He doesn't run so (as) fast as Jack (does).	asas 否定句可用 not asas 或 not
	the same	他不如杰克跑得那样快。	soas

状		His book is the same as mine.	•
	suchas	他的书和我的一样。	
语		Henry is not such a good worker as	>
		Peter.	
		享利这个工人不如彼得那样好。	
	than	She has made greater progress this	表示不同程度之比
从		year than she did last year.	较,主句中用比较级
		她今年比去年进步更大。	的形容词或副词。
句		He bought fewer books than I (did).	
		他买的书比我买的少。	

种类	从属连 句	例	说明
比较	the morethe more	The more you read, the better you understand. 你看的书越多,你懂得的就越多。 The more tickets you sell, the more money you will get.	the morethe more 意思为越越,通 常的语序为从句在 前主句在后,这两个 the 都是表示程度的
状语	180	你卖的票越多,你的收入也越多。 The harder you work, the greater progress you will make.	副词,用在比较级的形容词或副词前面。
从句		你工作越努力,你取得的进步就越大。 The sooner, the better. 越快越好。	句子意思明显, 句子 的主语和动词都可 省略。
		The warmer, the better. 越暖和越好。	
特殊形式的状语从句	that	We are sure (that)the four modernization will be realized in China. 我们相信四化一定会在中国实现。 I'm sorry (that) I didn't have time to write you sooner. 很抱歉,我没有抽出时间早点给你写信。 I am afraid that I can't go with you. 恐怕我不能同你一起去了。	它看作是一个特殊 的状语从句,用来修 饰表语的形容词。这 种从句的连词常常
			被省略。

巩固训练 (夯实基础)

1,	You like sports_		I'd like to 1	read.			_1
	A. when	В.	while	C.	but	D.	yet -
2,	we wer	e sir	nging, the to	eacher	came in.		
	A D C	D	C		A	D.	Until
3.	I was about to le	eave	my house_		the phone ra	ıng.	
	A. Before I was about to le A. while They did not store	В.	when	C.	as	Ď.	after
T)_	They are not stop	, mgi	11111 <u>5</u>		ic was no circ	JIIIY	ICIL.
, (A. until	_	B. after	C.	when	D.	since
5	I have not seen hi	im_	he we	ent to c	ollege.		
~_	A. when	В.	before	C.	as	D.	since
J 6,	It is five days		we cam	e here.			
	A. when	В.	before	C.	as	D.	since
7、	It was not long_		he got t	o knov	v it.		
	A. when	В.	before	C.	after	D.	until
8,	We shall go	v	we are free.				
	A. whenever	В.	whatever	C.	wherever	D.	however
9、	I live						

A. When B. So long as C. As soon as D. On condition
10. I was reading a novelhe was watching TV. A. when B. while C. before D. as 11. Put the medicineyou can easily get it. A. so that B. where C. which D. there 12. We will go the Party wants us to go
11. Put the medicineyou can easily get it.
A. so that B. where C. which D. there
A. wherever B. there C. to the place D. which
13there is a will there is a way. A. When B. Where C. Whether D. How
14. I am goingyou went last week. A. where B. wherever C. when D. the place
A. where B. wherever C. when D. the place 15,you go, you should bear the motherland in your mind.
A. Where B. Wherever C. Whatever D. However
16weather permits, we'll have an outing. A. For B. Though C. While D. If
A. For B. Though C. While D. If 17, You won't succeed harder.
A. unless you will work C. unless you don't work D. if you won't work
C. unless you don't work D. if you won't work
C. unless you don't work 18. I wonder if heus, and I think if heus we'll be able to complete the task ahead of time.
A. helps, helps B. will help, helps
A. helps, helps C. helps, will help D. will help, will help 19. I don't like to be interrupted if I A. speak B. will help, will help 19. I don't like to be interrupted if I A. speak B. will speak C. am speaking D. spoke 20. If you this experiment you will understand the theory better. A. will be doing B. have done C. will have done D. would do
A. speak B. will speak C. am speaking D. spoke
20. If you this experiment you will understand the theory better.
A. will be doing B. nave done C. will have done D. would do 21. I would like to do it I like it.
21. I would like to do it I like it. A. since B. because C. because of D. now that
22\everybody is here, Let's set off. A. Since B. Because C. For D. After 23\ It washe was ill that he was absent yesterday. A. because B. as C. since D. now that
23. It was he was ill that he was absent yesterday.
23. It washe was ill that he was absent yesterday. A. because B. as C. since D. now that 24it is raining, we had better take a taxi.
24it is raining, we had better take a taxi. A. For B. As C. Because of D. When 25. "Why can't you do it now?""I'm too busy." A. Since B. As C. Because D. For 26. He must have passed this way,here are his footprints. A. since B. because of C. now that D. for
25、"Why can't you do it now?""I'm too busy."
A. Since B. As C. Because D. For
A. since B. because of C. now that D. for
2/\ everybody is here, Let's begin our meeting.
A. Now that B. Because C. For D. When 28. His speech madedeep impression on the audience that they could hardly
forget it.
A. such a B. so a C. so D. such
29. They worked hard they finished their work ahead of time. A. so B. so that C. such that D. so as to
A. so B. so that C. such that D. so as to 30. He was he couldn't stand up.
A. such, that B. so, that C. very, that D. so, as to 31. The foreigner spoke his interpreter could hardly catch his words.
A. such fast that B. so fast
C. so fast that D. so fastly that
32. The book isit gives a wrong idea of the facts. A. so writing that B. such written that
C. such writing that D. so written that
33. The house costwe didn't buy it. A. so much money that B. so many money that
C. such much money that D. such many money that
34. It isall of us can do it.
A. so easy exercise that B. such easy an exercise

	C 1 ' D	W// X * *	
	C. such easy exercise D	. so easy an exerc	eise that
35	She hasshe remembers all the	names of the stude	nts she has taught.
	A. so good memory that B C. such good memory that D	. such a good me	mory that
	C. such good memory that D	. good memory	•
36	They stopped at Tianjing they m	gight visit the TV to	ower
301	A so D because C	as that	in and an
2.5	A. so B. because C	. so that D.	in order
37	We all got up earlywe might state. A. in order that B. in order to C	irt at six.	
	A. in order that B. in order to C	. so D.	so as to
38.	Let the dog loose so that it have	e a min	
501	Let the dog loose so that ithave A. should B. must C	could D	need
20	A. should B. must C. clearly so that your teacher A. Write, can understand C. To write, could understand He started early so that he there A. could get B. got C. ha it was late, she went on workin	. could D.	need
39	clearly so that your teacher_	you correctly	·
	A. Write, can understand	B. Having wri	tten, can understand
	C. To write, could understand	D. Writing, wi	ll understand
40.	He started early so that he there	in time	
101	A could get P get C he	nd got D w	ould have got
41	A. could get D. got C. III	id got D. we	ould have got
	A. Though B. Because C we fail, we trying.	. Since D. W.	hether
42	we fail, we trying.		. Kla
	A. Even if, don't stop	B. Even thoug	h won't ston
	C. Even, will not stop		
42	c. Even, will not stop		igh, shall never stop
43	the pain was bad,he did	not complain.	K
	A. Although, but	B. Though, bu	
	C. Though, vet	D. Even, still	
44.	physics, he likes maths better.		(),
	A. As he much likes	B. Much as he	likas
4 N.	A. As he much likes		
	A. As he much likes C. Much likes as he	D. Likes much	as ne
45	telephones, tell lilli I ill out.	X(X)	•
	A. No matter whoever B. Who	C. Whoever	D. Anyone
46.	We'll carry the reform to the end	hannens	J
	A no motter how	Dynhotoxor	
	A. no matter how	B. whatever	1. 1. 1.
	C. anything	D. no matter w	hich
47、	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane	D. no matter w	hich
47、	C. anything	D. no matter w	hich
47、	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less	hich
	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer	D. no matter we than by ship.	hich
	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class.	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less	
	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude	
48、	C. anything It takes time to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller than in his class. A. others C. any other one	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less	
48、	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others C. any other one it was finished in time.	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other	nts
48、	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others C. any other one it was finished in time.	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other	nts
48、	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others C. any other one it was finished in time.	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other	nts
48、 49、	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others C. any other oneit was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the	nts
48、 49、	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others C. any other oneit was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorryI have caused so m	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble.	nts s the work was work difficult
48、 49、 50、	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others C. any other oneit was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorryI have caused so m A. that B. for	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as	nts s the work was work difficult D. since
48、 49、 50、	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others C. any other oneit was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorryI have caused so m A. that B. for	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as	nts s the work was work difficult D. since
48、 49、 50、	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others C. any other oneit was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorryI have caused so m A. that B. for	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as	nts s the work was work difficult D. since
48、 49、 50、 51	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others C. any other oneit was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorry I have caused so m A. that B. forhe came, he would bring us a l A. Every times B. one time	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as	nts s the work was work difficult D. since
48、 49、 50、 51	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others C. any other oneit was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorryI have caused so m A. that B. for A. that B. for A. Every times B. one time I'll tell him about itI see him.	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the such trouble. C. as ot of flowers. C. Every time	nts s the work was work difficult D. since D. Once a time
48、 49、 50、 51 52	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others C. any other oneit was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorry I have caused so m A. that	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as ot of flowers. C. Every time . while	nts s the work was work difficult D. since
48、 49、 50、 51 52	C. anything It takes time to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller than in his class. A. others C. any other one it was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorry I have caused so m A. that	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as ot of flowers. C. Every time while	nts s the work was work difficult D. since D. Once a time D. as
48、 49、 50、 51 52	C. anything It takes time to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller than in his class. A. others C. any other one it was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorry I have caused so m A. that	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as ot of flowers. C. Every time while	nts s the work was work difficult D. since D. Once a time
48、 49、 50、 51 52	C. anything It takes time to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller than in his class. A. others C. any other one it was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorry I have caused so m A. that	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as ot of flowers. C. Every time while	nts s the work was work difficult D. since D. Once a time D. as
48、 49、 50、 51 52 53	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others C. any other oneit was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorry I have caused so m A. that	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as ot of flowers. C. Every time while one rang as	nts s the work was work difficult D. since D. Once a time D. as D. after
48、 49、 50、 51 52 53 54	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others C. any other oneit was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorry I have caused so m A. that	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as ot of flowers. C. Every time while one rang as as	nts s the work was work difficult D. since D. Once a time D. as
48、 49、 50、 51 52 53 54	C. anything It takes time to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller than in his class. A. others C. any other one it was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorry I have caused so m A. that	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as ot of flowers. C. Every time while one rang as as ent without him.	nts s the work was work difficult D. since D. Once a time D. as D. after D. wherever
48 \\ 49 \\ 50 \\ 51 \\ 52 \\ 53 \\ 54 \\ 55	C. anything It takes time to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller than in his class. A. others C. any other one it was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorry I have caused so m A. that	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as ot of flowers. C. Every time while one rang as as ent without him. For	nts s the work was work difficult D. since D. Once a time D. as D. after
48 \\ 49 \\ 50 \\ 51 \\ 52 \\ 53 \\ 54 \\ 55	C. anything It takes time to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller than in his class. A. others C. any other one it was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorry I have caused so m A. that B. for A. Every times B. one time I'll tell him about it I see him. A. as soon as B. so soon as C. I had hardly sat down the telephole A. than B. when C. Sit you like. A. where B. at the place C. A. Since B. As C. All plants need air they need water.	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as ot of flowers. C. Every time while one rang as as ent without him. For	nts s the work was work difficult D. since D. Once a time D. as D. after D. wherever D. Because of
48 \\ 49 \\ 50 \\ 51 \\ 52 \\ 53 \\ 54 \\ 55	C. anything It takes time to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller than in his class. A. others C. any other one it was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorry I have caused so m A. that B. for A. Every times B. one time I'll tell him about it I see him. A. as soon as B. so soon as C. I had hardly sat down the telephole A. than B. when C. Sit you like. A. where B. at the place C. A. Since B. As C. All plants need air they need water.	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as ot of flowers. C. Every time while one rang as as ent without him. For	nts s the work was work difficult D. since D. Once a time D. as D. after D. wherever D. Because of
48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56	C. anything It takes time to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller than in his class. A. others C. any other one it was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorry I have caused so m A. that B. for A. Every times B. one time I'll tell him about it I see him. A. as soon as B. so soon as C. I had hardly sat down the telephora. A. than B. when C. Sit you like. A. where B. at the place C he wasn't ready in time, we want as a soon as C. All plants need air they need water A. like B. as if C.	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as ot of flowers. C. Every time while one rang as as ent without him. For er. as	nts s the work was work difficult D. since D. Once a time D. as D. after D. wherever
48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others C. any other oneit was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorry I have caused so m A. that	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as ot of flowers. C. Every time while one rang as as ent without him. For er. as	the work was work difficult D. since D. Once a time D. as D. after D. wherever D. Because of D. so
48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others C. any other oneit was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorry I have caused so m A. that B. for A. Every times B. one time I'll tell him about it I see him. A. as soon as B. so soon as C. I had hardly sat down the telephe A. than B. when C. Sit you like. A. where B. at the place C he wasn't ready in time, we were a search as if C. A. like B. as if C. Work hard you can succeed. A. in order to B. so that C.	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as ot of flowers. C. Every time . while one rang . as . as ent without him For er as	the work was work difficult D. since D. Once a time D. as D. after D. wherever D. Because of D. so
48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others C. any other oneit was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorry I have caused so m A. that	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as ot of flowers. C. Every time while one rang as as ent without him. For er. as for fear that	the work was work difficult D. since D. Once a time D. as D. after D. wherever D. Because of D. so D. in case
48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56	C. anything It takestime to go there by plane A. far fewer C. much fewer He is taller thanin his class. A. others C. any other oneit was finished in time. A. As the work was difficult C. Difficult as was the work I am sorry I have caused so m A. that	D. no matter we than by ship. B. far less D. more less B. all the stude D. the other B. Difficult as D. As was the uch trouble. C. as ot of flowers. C. Every time . while one rang . as . as ent without him For er as	the work was work difficult D. since D. Once a time D. as D. after D. wherever D. Because of D. so

59、7	The hard he work	ks,he v	vill make.	•	
Α.	the greater	В.	the greater progress		
C.	and the more	D.	more		
60、_	we have t	hought it over	we'll takesteps.		
A.	Till, not	B. When,	no C. Until, any	D.	Until, no

名词性从句

知识要点:

1、熟悉并掌握各个连接词、关系代词和连接副词的用法。 2、熟悉并掌握复合句即名词性从句(主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句、同位语从句),定语从句和状语从句。 什么叫复合句 由一个主句和一个或一个以上的从句构成的句子叫复合句。在复合句中主句是全句的主体,从句是全句的一个成分,不能独立。 从句通常是用关联词来引导的。在这里关联词还起联系从句和主句的作用。

主从复合句(Complex Sentences)

一、从句的种类.

<i>\ \\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\</i>	大•
	主语从句(Subject Clauses)
1、名词性从	表语从句(Predicative Clauses)
句	
Noun Clauses	宾语从句(Object Clauses)
	同位语从句(Appositive Clauses)
	(Attributive Clauses)
3、状语从句	(Adverbial Clauses)
<u>2</u> 111 · 1/2 π/	4.4.1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

- 注: 以 it 作形式主语,把主语从句后置的常用的句型有:
 (1) It + be + 形容词 + that 从句
 (2) It + be + 名词词组 + that 从句
 (3) It + be + 过去分词 + that 从句
 (4) It seem, happen 等不及物动词 + that 从句

、常用的关联词

→ 1111 1111 111 111 111 111 111 111 111	77.1
1、从属连词	that(无词义);whether 是否;if 假如,是否
	although(though)虽然; because 因为
	when 当时候; before 在前; after 在后
M' K' L	since 既然,自从;as 正如,尽管,一边,由于;while 在…期
0	间
	as soon as 一就;as long as 只要;as if 好像
2、连接代词	who, whom, which, what, whose
3、连接副词	when, where, why, how
4、关系代词	who, whom, whose, which, that
5、关系副词	when, where, why

1、主语从句:

种类	关联词	例句	说明
连	that	That he will come and help you is	l that 在句首不可省

			certain. 他来帮助你是确实无疑的。	去。
	词	whether	Whether there is life on the moon is an	主语从句中只能用
			interesting question. 月球上有没有生命	whether 不可用 if。
			是个有趣的问题。	
É		who	What he wants to tell us is not clear.	
	接	what	他要跟我们说什么,还不清楚。	
귾		which	Who will win the match is still	主语从句放在句
	词	whatever	unknown. 谁能赢得这场比赛还不得而	首, 句子常显得笨重,
			知。	因此一般
り	连	when	It is known to us how he became a	把它移到句子后面,
1.	接	where	writer. 我们都知道他是如何成为一名	前面用引导词"it"来作
右		why	作家的。	形式主语。
	词	how	Where the English evening will be	X
			held has not yet been announced. 英语	.X/.\?
			晚会将在哪里举行,还没有宣布。	
	2	令(五日)	~ V 1	

2、宾语从旬:

	2、	[八			
	种类	JA.	关联词	》 句	说明
	5	陈述意义		I believe(that) he is honest. 我相	that 在句中不担任
		述	that	信他是忠诚的。	任何成分,在口语或
		意	0	We must never think(that) we are	非正式的文体中常被
N		义		good in everything while others are	省去,但如从句是并 列句时,第二个分句前
V				good in nothing. 我们决不能认为	列句时,第二个分句前
Ŋ		N-Z		自己什么都好,别人什么都不好。	的 that 不可省。
	兵	疑	• •	I wonder whether he will come or	whether 常与 or not
		问意义	if	not. 我想知道他来还是不来。	连用,不能用if代替。
		息	whether	Everything depends on whether	作介词宾语要用
7	ļu	X		we have enough money. 一切要看	whether 不能用 if。
				我们是否有足够的钱。	
				I don't know if(whether) it is	
				interesting. 我不知道它是否有意	
				思。	从句是否定句时一般
				He doesn't care if it isn't a fine	用 if 引导。
)#	4十.	1 1	day. 他不在乎天气是否好。	(字) 五 [
	语	特	who, whom,	Please tell me what you want. 请	宾语从句作及物动
		殊疑	which, whos	告诉我你需要什么?	词宾语也可做介词的
		知	e,what,	She always thinks of how she	宾语。
		问意	when,	can work well. 她总是在想怎样能	/ _^
		尽义	how,whoeve	把工作做好。	\7/\
		X	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	She will give whoever needs help a warm support. 凡需要帮助的人,	/- // /
			r, whatever,	她都会给予热情的支持。	ベルへ
		11.	whichever	次位的区别 1 次月日1 次 10。	N'K N
	从	注 1	Willeliever	We must make it clear that	如果宾语从句后面
				anyone who breaks the law will be	有定语补足语、则田
ŀ				nunished 我们必须认清无论谁讳	计作形式定语 将从句
V)	punished. 我们必须认清无论谁违 反了法律都要受到惩罚。	如果其后从可归面 有宾语补足语,则用 it作形式宾语,将从句 后置。
	旬	注 2		We don't think you are here. 我	think, believe,
		(- F		们认为你不在这。	imagine, suppose 等动
	, ' '	_		I don't believe he will do so. 我	词引出的宾语从句,
	5			相信他不会这样做。	要将从句中的否定形
				TRIBIC I AICH IN.	式,移动主句中。
L					E 12 /4 7 1

3、表语从句:

<i>J</i> \	1	C VII /// PJ:			
种类	=	关联词	例 句	说明]
表	连词	that whether as if	The problem is(that) they can't get here early enough. 问题是他们不能很早到达这里。 It looks as if it's going to rain. 看起来天要下雨。	在非正式的 文体中 that 可 以省去。	

语	连	who	│ That's just what I want. 这正是我想要的。 │ 表语从句位
	接	what	The question is who(which of you) will be the 于主句系动词
从	代	which	next speaker. 问题是谁(你们哪一位)接着发之后
	词		言。
自	连	when	This is where our problem lies. 这就是我们
	接	where	的问题所在。
	副	why	That is why he didn't come to the meeting. 那
	词	how	就是他为什么不到会的原因。

4、同位语从句:

种类	关联词	例句	说明
同	由连词	The news that he had landed on the moon	同位语从句说明
位	that 引导,	spread all over the world. 他曾在月球上登陆这个消息传遍世界。	其前面的名词的具
语	不担任成	这个消息传遍世界。	体内容,常用的名
从	分,也可	I have no idea when he will come back	词如: fact, news,
句		home. 我不知道他什么时候回来。	idea, hope,
		The thought came to him that Mary had	thought, question,
		probably fallen ill. 他想到可能玛丽生病了。	order, fear, doubt,
-	引导。	He must answer the question whether he	word, proof, belief,
.///		agrees to it or not. 他必须回答他是否同意此	story等。
		事这样一个问题。	, - X

名词性从句包括四种从句即主语从句、表词从句、宾语从句和同位词从句。名词性 从句的特点: that 、who、 whom、 what 、whether 及 when、 where 引导名词性从句 时必须是陈述句词序:

1、主词从句:

That light travels in straight line is known to all.

(That 引导主语从句不可省)

When the plan is to take off hasn't been announced.

主语从句通常以 it 做形主语出现

It was my fault that I had him play foatball all faternoon.

It is important that we should go to the school to talk with the teacher.

2、表语从句,即名词性从句放在表语位置就是表语从句,需要注意的,主语是 reason 时,表语要用 that 引导而不是 because.

The reason why he was late was that he missed the train by one minute this morning

3、宾语从句 that 常可以省略,并且注意时态呼应,当主句为过去时时,从句 时态一定往前推移,不可出现现在时或现在完成时。

The teacher told us that Tomo had left us for America.

The idea that one can do the work without thinking is wrong. (同位 idea 在从句中 无位置,而从句只是具体说明 idea 的内容)。

The idea that you put forward at the meeting is wrong . (定语从句, idea 做 put forward 的宾语)。

【专项训练】(夯实基础)

1.	I wonder how much		
Α.	cost these shoes	В.	do these shoes cost
C.	these shoes cost	D.	are these shoes cost
2.	Nobody knew		AXXXX///A
A.	where he comes	В.	where he was from
C.	where he is from	D.	where does he come from
3.	Excuse me ,would you please		
A.	when the sports meet will be	taker	place.
В.	when was the sports meet going	ng to	be held.
C.	when is the sports meet to beg	gin .	
D.	when the sports meet is to tak	e pla	ice.
	Cornputers can only give cut		has been stored in them.

A.	that	В.	which
С.	what	D.	anything
	She wanted to know		
A	whether I knew her and when	e did	she work
	if I knew her and the factory		
	wherther I knew her and the		
D.	if I knew her and the factory	wner	e sne worked
6.	My friend wouldn't tell me		his new car .
Α.	how much he paid for	в.	how much did he pay
C.	he paid how much for	D.	did he pay how much
7.	A simple experiment shows		air has some strength .
Α.	what	В.	that
C.	which	D.	who
8.	Heyou are not g	oing	abroad.
	surprised that		is surprised that
	surprised at		is surprised whether
	Father asked	υ.	is surprised whether
	what was wrong with me	D	what's wrong with me
A.	what was wrong with me		
	what wrong was with me		what wrong is with me
10.			I rest or not .
Α.	if		whether
C.	that		when
	The trouble isv		
	what		that
C.	how	D.	why that
12.	That isthere		
	what		when
C.	why	D.	however
13.		and is	he wants to change his mind.
	That, that		Which, what
	What, what		What, why
			sunderstoodI said.
	that ,that		what, what
	what, that		that, what
			nt fail in the exam worried him .
	which		that
	when	D.	
	The facthe is a		han is well known.
Α.		В.	that
	which	D.	7= / \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \
17.	I was free that		
Α.	It happened to		It happened that
C.	That happened	D.	It was happened that
18.	I will accept the		is none of your business.
Α.	If		Whether
C.	What		Which
19.	I have will be y		
A	No matter what		No matter whatever
Ĉ	Whatever		That
20.			e can do more for the people.
Δ0.	of how		how
A.			
	of that		why
21.		er tha	at the Japanese Minister will arrive next Monday.
Α.	It says		It is said
	It has said	D.	He is said
	We think it important		college students should master at least one foreign
languag			N
Α.	which	В.	that
			/)

С.	what	D.	whether	
23.	Comrade Wang is to give us	a tal	k onhe saw and heard in Britain.	
Α.	what	В.	all what	
C.	that	D.	which	
24.	The town is no longer		it was ten years ago.	
Α.	which		that	
C.	what		when	
25.		was	lying.	
Α.	who	В.	whoever	
	Anyone		D. The person	×
		as wa	anted at the office.	
	which		why	
	that		whether	\nearrow
27.	nothing to do w			'>
	What he did is		What he has done	
	What did he do		What he has done has	
	The problem is	_	l go .	
	that		that who	
	who		whoever	
29.			er planet is almost impossible.	
	How		That	
	Why		Whether	
30.	was a well -knov			
Α.	That their team was weak			
	Their teem week wools	1.)	If their team was week	

定语从句

、定语从句

- 1. 定语从句三步:第一找出先行词;第二看先行词在定语从句中的语法功能(做主语、宾语或状语);第三选择合适的关联词。
- 2. 定语从句在选择关连词 that 与 which 时,常常容易出错,所以应记住什么时候只能 用 that, 什么时候只能用 which.
- (1). 只能用 that 的情况归纳 4 种: 即先得词被序数词最高级修饰过; 先行词为 all 、everything、nothing 等不定代词; 先行词同时是人和物并列时; 最后先行词分别被 the only 、the very the same、the last 修饰。请看下列四组例句,注意其先行词:
- The first thing that we should do is to work out a plan.
 It almost seemed as if the good man were trying to teach us all that he knew at this lesson.
- 3. Later my father and Mr.Crosset talked for about half an four of things and persons that
- they remembered in school.
 ④. This is the very dictionary that I want to find.
 ②. 只用 which is 情况有两种情况: 一是非限制性定语从句,关连词要用 which; 请看下列两组例句:

I said nothing, which made him more angry.

I have the book about which you are talking.

- 三、在定语从句的非限制性定语中, which 和 as 是容易混淆的。在很多情况下两者兼 可互换,但在下列情况中不可互换:
- 1、通常 As 可以放在整句的句首,而 which, 只能在逗号之后, as 本身含有"正如", as 在定语从句中既可是主语也可做宾语

As appear from her paper ,she has read widely in Romantic literature. She is remarkable, as I have told you.

2、which 在做非限制性定语从句关联词时可以无明确先行词,指前句整个的意思,

如: she has worried again, which surprises us .
四、在定语从句中,许多人往往分不清 all that 和 what, what 实际上只引导名词性从句,它相当于 all that 两个字,例如:

All that I know is that he has made up his mind to heave the country for a new place.

= what I know is that

限定性定语从句:

	N MK M	1. 工化 归.	//\ PJ •)	
	种类	先行词	关联词	例句	说明
Ī	-	(人)	who	This is the doctor who saved	who 在从句中做主语
	定	在从句		the boy's life.	whom 在从句中做宾
	1.50	中做主			语,口语中 who 可以
		语或宾			代替 whom,也可以
		语		want to introduce to you.	被省去,但做介词宾
	语			她就是我要介绍给你的新学	语时只能用 whom
		•	which	生 (人)	
				Please pass me the book which	
V	从	物		is lying on the table.	which 在从句中做主
		在从句			语。
1		中做主			which 充当宾语时可
		语或宾		is very interesting.	以省去。
	句	语		汤姆买的小说很有意思。	
				Can you lend me the magazine	
				about which you talked	which 做介词宾语不
				yesterday?	可省
				你能把昨天谈到的那本杂志	
				借给我吗?	
L					

种类	先行词	美联	例句	说明
		词		2.
		whose	The professor whose daughter teaches	whose 在从句中做
			you English is Dr. Williams	定语
定	人			指某人的也可以
定语从句	或物的			用of whom 代替
从	物		teaches you English is Dr. Williams.	whose
句	的		The bike whose brake was damaged has	
-;//				指物时也可以
		•	那辆坏了闸的自行车现在已经修好了。	
			=The bike the brake of which was	替 whose
			damaged has now been repaired	
0		that	The woman that is playing the piano is	that 指人做主语
	人		Miss Zhang.	
			正在弹钢琴的那位妇女是张小姐。	
	或		I'd like to see the films that are just on	that 指物做主语
			show.	
			我想看那些刚上映的电影。	
			₩ - X	
种类	先行词	关联	句 句	说明
		词		

,			•		
		物 all, littlen 和 some,a	that	They talked for about an hour of things and persons that they remember in the school. 他们谈起他们所记得起的学校里的人和事,谈了大约有半个小时。 I'll tell you all(that) I know about it. 我要告诉你我所知道这件事的一切情况。 Is there anything (that) I can do for you?	先行词分别表示 人和物,关系代用 要用 that,不用 who 或 which 先行词表示物,关 系代词用 that 不 用 which, 在从 中做宾语可省 去。如果先行词
		ny every ,n o 构成 的合成 代词	that	有什么我可以帮助做的事吗? I've brought everything (that)you need. 我把你需要的东西都拿来了。 This is the best film that I have seen.	是人时,关系代词不受制约,用 that或 who (whom)均可
		人或物		这是我看过的最好的一部电影。 The first place that we'll visit is Beijing Library. 我们要参观的第一个地方是北京图书 馆	先行词被形容词 最高级或序数词 修饰时定语从句 用 that 引导。
	定语	人	that	He is the only person that is believable. 他是唯一可靠的人。 John is the very person that she wants to see. 约翰正是她要见的人。	先行词被 the only, the very,the same 等修饰时用关系 代词 that.
	从句	或物		Who is the man that is talking with Tom? 正在和汤姆谈话的人是谁? Which of the books that you bought is easy to read? 你买的那些书中哪一本容易读。	当主句以 who、which 开头的特殊疑问句时, 定语从句要用 that
		时	when	He came at a time when we. needed him most.他在我们最需要的时候来了。	在定语从句中作时间状语
		? 间		We'll never forget the day when the People's Republic of China was founded. 我们永远不会忘记中华人民共和国成立的那一天。	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

注: 先行词是 time, minute, moment, next tim 很少用关系副词 when,可用 that 但通常

省去。

	(()	where	This is the room where he put up for	在定语从句中作地点状
	地点		the night.	语
Λ			这就是他渡过夜晚的那房子。	
Т	原因	why	I know the reason why she studies so	在定语从句中作原因状
•	理由		well.	语
			我知道她学习好的原因。	N / N

(2) 非限制性定语从句

	(<u>4</u>) <u>1</u>	工门中文学	足归外	. PJ	
ĺ	种类	先行	关联	例 句	说明
		词	词	1 K	
ĺ			who	George ,who is my classmate,	
		人	whom	has won a scholarship.	能用 that 代替

			乔治获得了奖学金,他是我 的同学。	1//~
非			Dr. Li , whom I know very well, will come here	
限		1. : . 1.	tomorrow. 李大夫明天将来这儿,我跟	1:1 松ీ 天司少士 山天
制	物	WIIICH	他很熟悉。 I gave him a New Year	which 指物,不可省去,也不能用 that 代替
性	温右	which	card ,which he enjoyed very much. 我给他一张贺年卡,他很喜	which 作主语指它前面的整。
定	没有 固定 的先	WIIICH	次它。 He studies hard at school	个句子,不可用 that 代替, 强调结果。
语	行词而是		when he was young, which leads to his success in his later	J\Z\ \htilda \L\ \cdots
从	一个一个一个一个	as	life.	as 指全句,在从句中做主语。
句		(0)	导致了他后来生活中的成功。	
	16		He gets up early , as is always his habit. 他总是早起床,这是他的习	as 指全句意思,在从句中做 宾语。
	•		惯。 John was admitted into the college, as we had expected. 约翰被大学录取了,这是我	as 引导的定语从句可以放在 句首,句中或句末。
			们期待的。 The earth ,as is known to all ,is round. 人人皆知,地球是圆的。	(5)
			This is the same book as I lost yesterday. 这本书与我昨天丢失的那本书一样。	用于 the same as, such as ,asas 等结构中。

(3) 限制性定语从句与非限制性定语从句的区别

(3) 限制性化信外リラヨ	一帐则往此归外引引俭劝	7. V.
119	限制性定语从句	非限制性定语从句
从句与先行词的关系	从句是先行词不可缺少的	从句只是对先行词的附加
	定语,如果省去,主句的	说明,如果省去,主句的意
₩-X	意思就会不完整或不明	思仍然清楚或完整
	确。	-///
标点	从句和主句之间不用逗号	从句和主句之间通常用逗
1/()/	分开	号分开///
	指人 who (that) whom	指人 who(作主语)whom
关	指物 which (that)	(做宾语)
关系	人和物 whose	指物 which
人 代	关系代词在从句中作宾语	人和物的 whose
词	时可以省去	关系代词一般不可省
修饰	从句只修饰一个名词或代	可以修饰一个名词或代词
lis tih	词	也可修饰整个主句
翻译	定语从句译在被修饰词的	定语从句通常被译成另一
曲11 4十	前面	个独立的句子
	1111 1111	1 A₩─₩ H1 . A 1

【专项	[训练】(夯实基础)	X//>
1.	Football is a very interest	esting game, is played all over the world.
	that B.	which
2.	it D. Is there anything else	vou require?
Δ.	which B.	that
		what
٥.	The last place we visited	
Α.	which B. where D.	
Ç.	where D.	
		and booksinterested him greatly in the
school.		1
		who
		that
		the train goes, will be completed soon.
		that
		whom
6.	His uncle works in a factory	bicycles are made.
Α.		which
//C.	where D. There is no dictionary	. there
7.	There is no dictionary	_you can find everything.
A.	that B.	which
C.	where D.	in that
8.	Next month,you'll spe	and in your hometown is coming.
	which B.	that
C.	when D.	, where
9.	Next month, you'll b	be in your hometown is coming.
	which B.	that
		where
10.	. I often thought of my childhood	Llived on a farm.
Α.	which B.	where
		who
	. He wanted to know the time	
		when
		what
	There isn't so much noise in the	
	that B.	which
		as
	. They could only read such storie	eshad been rewritten in simple
English		
		which
		what
		makes them very light.
		as
		it
	. Crusoe's dog hecame ill and die	
		which
		this
_ ' '	. They've invited me to their party	
		which
		this
	we know now ,bats	
		Which
		What
10	. John got beaten in the game,	had been expected
		that who
19.	has been said above,	grammar is a set of dead fules.
		- a

Α.			
	Which	В.	What
C.	That		As
20.	Do you know the reason		he was late?
	that	В.	which
C.	for what		for which
			e could study the skies.
	in which		with that
	through which	/	by it
	I have bought two ballpens,_		
	none of which	В.	neither of which
C.	none of them		neither of them
			in our school,are girls.
	of whom two thirds	B.	two -thirds of them
	two -third in them		two -thirds in which
	Do you know the man		?
	whom I spoke	В.	to who I spoke
	I spoke to		that I spoke
			next week isn't far from here .
Ā.	where		in which
	which		to which
	This is one of the best films		
	have been shown		that have shown
	that have been shown		which has been shown
	Can you lend me the book _		
	you talked about	B.	about that you talked
	that you talked		which you talked
			family is in the city .
	who		who's
	which		whose
	I'll never forget the days	and the second	we stayed together.
	when		in which
	which	D.	
	WIIICII		
	Is some German	n friê	ands visited last week ?
		·	ends visited last week?
A.	this school	В.	this the school
A. C.	this school this school one	В. D.	this the school this school where
A. C. 31.	this school this school one I'll tell youhe to	B. D. old 1	this the school this school where ne last month .
A. C. 31. A.	this school this school one I'll tell you all which	B. D. old 1 B.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what
A. C. 31. A. C.	this school this school one I'll tell you he to all which that all	B. D. old 1 B.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what all
A. C. 31. A. C. 32.	this school this school one I'll tell youhe to all which that all Do you know the reason	B. D. old r B. D.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday?
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A.	this school this school one I'll tell youhe to all which that all Do you know the reason for why	B. D. old r B. D.	this the school this school where me last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A. C.	this school this school one I'll tell youhe to all which that all Do you know the reason for why which	B. D. old r B. D.	this the school this school where me last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that why
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A. C. 33.	this school this school one I'll tell youhe to all which that all Do you know the reason for why which I still remember the day	B. D. old r B. D.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that whyshe first wore that pink dress.
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A. C. 33. A.	this school this school one I'll tell youhe to all which that all Do you know the reason for why which I still remember the day which	B. D. old r B. D. B. D.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that whyshe first wore that pink dress. in which
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A. C. 33. A. C.	this school this school one I'll tell you he to all which that all Do you know the reason for why which I still remember the day which on that	B. D. old r B. D. B. D.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that whyshe first wore that pink dress. in which on which
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A. C. 33. A. C. 34.	this school this school one I'll tell you he to all which that all Do you know the reason for why which I still remember the day which on that I'll show you a store	B. D. B. D. B. D.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that whyshe first wore that pink dress. in which on which _you may buy allyou need .
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A. C. 33. A. C. 34. A.	this school this school one I'll tell youhe to all which that all Do you know the reason for why which I still remember the day which on that I'll show you a store in which, /	B. D. old r B. D. B. D. B. D.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that whyshe first wore that pink dress. in which on which _you may buy allyou need . where , which
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A. C. 33. A. C. 34. A. C.	this school this school one I'll tell youhe to all which that all Do you know the reason for why which I still remember the day which on that I'll show you a store in which, / which, that	B. D. old r B. D. B. D. B. D.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that whyshe first wore that pink dress. in which on which _you may buy allyou need . where , which that , that
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A. C. 33. A. C. 34. A. C. 35.	this school this school one I'll tell youhe to all which that all Do you know the reason for why which I still remember the day which on that I'll show you a store in which, / which, that Winter is the time of year	B. D. B. D. B. D.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that whyshe first wore that pink dress. in which on which you may buy allyou need . where , which that , thatthe days are short and nights are long.
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A. C. 33. A. C. 34. A. C. 35. A.	this school this school one I'll tell youhe to all which that all Do you know the reason for why which I still remember the day which on that I'll show you a store in which , / which , that Winter is the time of year where	B. D. B. D. B. D. B. B. D.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that whyshe first wore that pink dress. in which on which you may buy allyou need . where , which that , thatthe days are short and nights are long. when
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A. C. 33. A. C. 35. A. C. 35. A. C.	this school this school one I'll tell youhe to all which that all Do you know the reason for why which I still remember the day which on that I'll show you a store in which , / which , that Winter is the time of year where that	B. D. B. D. B. D. B. D.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that whyshe first wore that pink dress. in which on which you may buy allyou need . where , which that , thatthe days are short and nights are long. when on which
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A. C. 33. A. C. 35. A. C. 36.	this school this school one I'll tell you he to all which that all Do you know the reason for why which I still remember the day which on that I'll show you a store in which , / which , that Winter is the time of year where that The train she wa	B. D. B. D. B. D. B. D. B. D. B. D.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that whyshe first wore that pink dress. in which on which _you may buy allyou need . where , which that , thatthe days are short and nights are long. when on which avelling was late.
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A. C. 33. A. C. 34. A. C. 35. A. C. 36. A.	this school this school one I'll tell you he to all which that all Do you know the reason for why which I still remember the day which on that I'll show you a store in which , / which , that Winter is the time of year where that The train she wa which	B. D. B. D. B. D. B. D. B. D. B. B. D.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that whyshe first wore that pink dress. in which on which you may buy allyou need . where , which that , thatthe days are short and nights are long. when on which avelling was late. on which
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A. C. 33. A. C. 35. A. C. 36. A. C.	this school this school one I'll tell youhe to all which that all Do you know the reason for why which I still remember the day which on that I'll show you a store in which , / which , that Winter is the time of year where that The trainshe wa which for which	B. D. B. D. B. D. B. D. B. D. B. D.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that whyshe first wore that pink dress. in which on which you may buy allyou need . where , which that , thatthe days are short and nights are long. when on which avelling was late. on which on that
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A. C. 34. A. C. 35. A. C. 36. A. C. 37.	this school this school one I'll tell youhe to all which that all Do you know the reason for why which I still remember the day which on that I'll show you a store in which, / which , that Winter is the time of year where that The trainshe wa which for which The second World War	B. D. B. D. B. D. B. D. C.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that whyshe first wore that pink dress. in which on which you may buy allyou need . where , which that , thatthe days are short and nights are long. when on which avelling was late. on which on thatmillions of people were killed ended in 1945.
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A. C. 33. A. C. 35. A. C. 36. A. C. 37. A.	this school this school one I'll tell youhe to all which that all Do you know the reason for why which I still remember the day which on that I'll show you a store in which , that Winter is the time of year where that The trainshe wa which for which The second World War during which	B. D. B. D. B. D. B. D. B. B. B. D. B. B. B. D. B.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that whyshe first wore that pink dress. in which on which you may buy allyou need . where , which that , thatthe days are short and nights are long. when on which avelling was late. on which on thatmillions of people were killed ended in 1945. in that
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A. C. 33. A. C. 35. A. C. 36. A. C. 37. A. C.	this school this school one I'll tell youhe to all which that all Do you know the reason for why which I still remember the day which on that I'll show you a store in which , / which , that Winter is the time of year where that The train she wa which for which The second World War during which where	B. D. B. D. B. D. B. D. B. B. B. D. B. B. B. D. B.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that whyshe first wore that pink dress. in which on which you may buy allyou need . where , which that , thatthe days are short and nights are long. when on which avelling was late. on which on thatmillions of people were killed ended in 1945. in that on which
A. C. 31. A. C. 32. A. C. 33. A. C. 35. A. C. 36. A. C. 37. A. C. 38.	this school this school one I'll tell youhe to all which that all Do you know the reason for why which I still remember the day which on that I'll show you a store in which , that Winter is the time of year where that The trainshe wa which for which The second World War during which	B. D. B. D. B. D. B. D. B. B. B. D. B. B. B. D. B.	this the school this school where ne last month . all what allshe got so angry yesterday? for that whyshe first wore that pink dress. in which on which you may buy allyou need . where , which that , thatthe days are short and nights are long. when on which avelling was late. on which on thatmillions of people were killed ended in 1945. in that

С.	which	D.	
39.	This is the best hotel in the cit	ty _	I know .
			that
		D.	
			were borrowed from the library .
	that	В.	
			they
			syou told me about are admired by us
all.	The scientist and his achieven	iCIII:	syou told life about are admired by us
	which	D	who
	that		whose
42.	She hasn't got enough money		
A.			that
C.	with which		for which
	Finally came the day		_he bad to beging his study for the next term.
			since
C. ,		D.	
44.	We hope to get such a tool _		he is using .
Α.	which	В.	as
		D.	where
45.	Is there anything1	to ye	ou.
A.	that is belonged	B.	that belongs
X\\\\ C.	which belongs	D.	that belong
46.	You can take any seat		is free .
			where
			in which
	The old woman has two sons		
Δ'.			of which
			of who
	My hometown is no longer th		
		В.	
			like
49.	You may take anything useful		
			what you want
	you want them	ט.	which you want
	He tore up my photo and		upset me.
		В.	
			what
	During the days		e worked as a servant at the Browns.
			following
			that followed
	The beautiful dress		Miss Jones went to the ball was borrowed from a
	l of hers .		-///
			wearing which
C.	worn by	D.	in which
53.	. The clever boy made a hole i	n th	e wall ,he could see what was going on
inside	e the house.		
A.	in which	В.	through which
) OC.			on which
4-74			
AIT (A)			
1/''\()			Ma.
			▼
140		1	X
	Λ.	T	▼ ▼
	_177		
•	1/4/1		
			እ ·

专题十八 虚

虚拟语气分三种情况来掌握:

- 1、虚拟条件句。
- 2、名词性虚拟语气。
- 3、虚拟语气的其他用语。

·、虚拟条件句:

条件状语从句是非真实情况,在这种情况下要用虚拟语气。

1、条件从句与现在事实不一致,其句型为:

If 主语+过去时,主语+should(could, would, 或 might)+动词原形,如:

If I were you, I would study hard.

If it rained, I would not be here now.

条件从句与过去事实不一致, 句型为:

If 主语+had+过去分词,主语+should(could, would, 或 might)+have+过去分 词,如:

If the doctor had come last night, the boy would have saved.

If I had not studied hard, I would have failed in the exam last term.

3、条件从句与将来事实不一致, 句型为:

十do,主语+should(could...)+ 过去时(与现在事实条件句一样)。

If it should rain tomorrow, we would stay at home.

If I were to go to the moon one day, I could see it with my own eyes.

If you missed the film to night, you would feel sorry.

注意问题:

1、If条件句中绝对不可出现"would"。

2、根据句中的时间状语,有时可能出现"混合虚拟"的情况,即主句可能是现在的情况,条件句也许是发生在过去的情况,但都是遵守上述句型。

3、在条件句中如果出现 were, had, should 可省去 if,将主语与这些词倒装,例如 Had the doctor come last night, the boy would have saved.

Were I to go to the moon one day, I would see it with my own eyes.

Should it rain tomorrow, we would stay at home.

二、名词性虚拟语气:

在表示命令、建议要求、惊叹时的名词性从句中需用虚拟语气,基本句型: 主语+(should)+动词原形,如:

Mother insisted that John go to bed at 9 o'clock. (宾语从句)

We suggested that the meeting should not be held.

It was required that the crops should be harvested at once. (主语从句)

The suggestion that he be invited was rejected. (同位语从句)

That is their demand that their wages be increased. (表语从句)

在这种句子中绝不出现"would""must""could"等。

虚拟语气在一些特殊词中的使用或含蓄条件句:

wish 后的宾语从句:

与现在愿望不一致 主语+过去时;

与过去愿望不一致 主语+had+过去分词;

与未来愿望不一致 主语+would (could) +原形。

I wish I were you.

I wish I had visited the white House when I was in the states.

I wish I met you tomorrow at the party.

2、It's time 句型: 当 It's time 后用 that 从句时应该为:

主语+should+原形 或 主语+过去时,例如:

It's time that you went to school. 或

It's time that you should go to school.
3、If only 引起的感叹句相当于"How I wish+宾语从句"
If only he could come! 他要能来就好了。
If only I had known the answer! 我要早知答案就好了。
If only I had known the answer! 我要早知答案就好了。 4、would rather, as if(though)引导的句子也需使用虚拟,表示过去的情况用过去
中代 Would failer, as Π (Hough) 月寸时刊 1 四面灰用座顶,农外是公时用地用是公中民时,丰二项大上收束的桂河用过土时, h_0
完成时,表示现在与将来的情况用过去时,如:
I'd rather you posted the letter right away.
I'd rather you had returned the book yesterday.
She loves the children as if they were hers.
Alan talked about Rome as if he had been there.
5、without, but, but for, otherwise 引起的短语或句子常暗含着含蓄条件。
Without you, I would never know him.
But for your cooperation, we wouldn't have done the work so well.
But that she was afraid, she would have said no.
I would be most glad to help you, but I' am busy now.
I would have come to the party yesterday, but I was working.
I am busy now, otherwise I would do you the favor!
【专项训练】(夯实基础)
1. It is important that a college student a foreign language.
A. will master B. master C. masters D. would master
2. It is strange that she without saying a word.
A. should have gone out B. went
C. should go out D. goes out
3. If my lawyer here last Saturday, he me from going.
A. had been, would have prevented
B. had been, would prevent
C. were, would prevent
D. were, would have prevent
4. ——"He is a brave man."
——"Yes, I wish I his courage."
A. have B. had C. will have D. may have
5. If it rain, the crops would be saved.
A should B will C is going to D was to
A. should B. will C. is going to D. was to 6. He ordered that the medicine by a special plane.
A was cent D would be cent
A. was sent C. should send D. be sent
C. should send D. be sent If you better now.
7. If you the medicine, you better now.
A. took, would feel C. had taken, would feel D. took, would have felt
C. had taken, would feel D. took, would have felt
8. She is my sister, but she often acts as if my mother.
A. is B. was C. were D. had been
9. I went to bed early last night, but I wish I so.
A. didn't do B. hadn't do C. haven't done D. couldn't do
10. I'd rather he tomorrow afternoon.
A. will come B. comes C. coming D. came

专题十九 "It"的用法和"There be"结构

一、代词 it

1	いり IT	
	用法	句 句
		This is a new dictionary. I bought it yesterday.
		这是一本新词典,我昨天买的。
		Tom joined the army last mouth. Do you know about
	代词。	it?
	/// #	汤姆上月入伍了,你知道这事吗?
	代 首 指 亦 代	Is this your car? No, it isn't. 这是你的汽车吗?不是。
	或 that 的作用	What's that?—It's a video. 那是什么?它是一台录
	ex mai miji ji ji	Whose room is this?—It is theirs.这是谁的房间,是他
	1×+-(们的。
	指明某人或某	Who's there? It's me. (It's John) 谁在那儿?是我。
-	物的身分,还	
•		Go and see who it is that rings. It's Bill.
	的婴儿	去看看是谁来的电话,是比尔。
	•	The Greens have a new baby. It's lovely.
		格林家有一个新生婴儿。它很可爱。
		It's Sunday today. 今天是星期天。
		It's three months since he came here.
		自从他来到这里,已经三个月了。 How far is it to the Great Wall .到长城有多远?
	暗ノ重反,川 值等	It's getting dark. 天快黑了。
	压力	How much is the coat? —It's ninety dollars.
		这件衣服多少钱?九十美元。
ı		

二、引导词 it

J.	J	MП					
		用法	句 句				
		代替不	It is up to you to decide. 这事要由你决定。				
	形		It makes me happy to hear you have recovered.				
		语	听说你恢复了健康,这使我很高兴。				
	式		It's no good smoking. 吸烟没有好处。				
名词短 It's worthwhile working the whole night on the prob							
		语	用整夜的时间来研究那个问题是值得的。				
	77	代替主	It doesn't matter what you do. 你干什么都没有关系。				
语语从句 It seems that everyone has known the news.							
J.			好象大家都知道这个消息。				
I consider it better to be early. 代替不 我认为能够早一些更好。 形 定式短 We found it impossible to get there before July . 我们觉得,要在七月以前到达那里是不可能的							
1		代替不	我认为能够早一些更好。				
	形	定式短	We found it impossible to get there before July . 我们觉得,要在七月以前到达那里是不可能的。				
	式	语	我们觉得,要在七月以前到达那里是不可能的。				
	宾	代替动	We thought it no use doing that.				
	语		我们认为做那事没有用。				
		语					
			The teacher makes it clear that everyone should hand in				
		语从句	his homework on time.				
			老师清楚地指出,每个人都应该按时交作业。				

三、**it 在强调结构中** 强调句型: It is (was) +被强调部分+ that (who)

强调	部公	例	说明
		14:1-1-1	
主	语	It is I who am to blame. 是我该受责	原句的谓语动词如果
		怪。	是现在或将来时态用
		It was your uncle that (who) came	It isthat(who)如果
		yesterday.	原句谓语动词是过去
		昨天来的是你叔叔。	时态,则用 It
130	` ` ` 		wasthat(who)。在
宾	冶	It was a new pen that Mother gave	强调时间,地点,原
	7	me.	因或方式时不要用
	X	母亲给我的是一支新钢笔。	when, where, how, 必
J.	LLL		须用 that。
	地	It was in the classroom that I left my	
	点	umbrella.	
	e I	我把雨伞就落在了教室里。	
315		It is at eleven that the train leaves.	re n
状		火车是在十一点钟离开。	、-i//>
	方式	It was just as he ordered that I acted.	11.7 - 01,
)	八	我正是照他吩咐的那样做的。	//// 0.3
语		It was because he was in trouble that	N, V L
	因	I tried my best to help him.	.0
		正是因为他处境困难我才尽力帮助	
		他。	
宾	补	It was red that we painted the gate.	
		我们把门油漆成红的颜色。	
		It was chairman that they elected	
		him.	
		他们选他担任的是主席的职务。	

• there be 结构

	there be 细构					
	基本句型句	结构	例			
ther	肯定句	there be +主+其它	There is a map on the wall. 墙上有张地图。			
e be	否定句 wall.	there be $+$ not $+$ \pm $+$	There is not a map on the			
	AITLES STA	其它	墙上没有地图。			
结构	一般疑问句	可 be + there +王+县 它	Is there a map on the wall? 墙上有地图吗?			
	肯定与否知 回答	Ē	Yes ,there is . No, there isn't. 是的,有 不,没有			
	特殊疑问 on the wall		—How many maps are there			
	句及回答		墙上有多少张地图? —There are two. 有两张			
注	There be	There be 句型也可以由其它动词代替 be,常用的词有 seem to				
1:	be, happen to be, appear to be, used to be 等词组或用 live,					
	come, stand, lie, occur, exist, flow 等动词。					

There seems to be much hope of our team beating theirs. 好象我们队很有希望打败他们队。
Only there lived an old fisherman in a village by the sea. 从前有一位老渔夫住在海边的一个村子里。
注 There be 之后如有几个并列主语时,用 is 或用 are 要取决于第一个主语是单数还有复数,单数用 is,复数则用 are. There is a pen, a pencil and two books on the desk. 桌上有一支钢笔,一支铅笔和两本书。
There are two books, a pen and a pencil on the desk. 桌上有两本书,一支钢笔和一支铅笔。

【专项训练】(夯实基础) it 的用法

II D	7用位						
1,	"Do you like fish?""Yes, I	like		"			
	A. × B. it	$\overline{\mathbf{C}}$. 1	hat		D. then	n	
2,	A. × B. it today?						
	A. How is it		В.	Wh	at is it		
	C. What is it like		D. [Hov	v is the weatl	ier.	
3,	"Do you want a watch?""		"				
////	A. Yes, I want it . C. No, I've got it.		B. `	Yes	, I want one.	7/	,-X
	C. No, I've got it.	-	D. [No,	I've got the	watc	h.
4、	"Whose exercise-book is t	hat?"			-1	人	
VO,	"hers" A. That is B. T						
	A. That is B. 7	This is		C.	It's	70	D. Its
5、							
	A. That	B. He			C. It		D. This
6,	What he has done helps us	s a lot,			?) `	
	A. isn't he B. d	loesn't h	e	C.	isn't it	D.	doesn't it
7、	We all thoughtno	use doir	ig th	at.			
	A. it B. t	hat		C.	this	D.	there
8,	I took it for granted	you \	voul	d co	ome to our pa	ırty.	
	A. when B. v	vhy		C. –	for what	D.	that
9、	How happyto be al	ble to stu	ıdy a	ınd I	live together	with	you!
	A. that will be B. i	s it		C.	will it be	D.	it will be
10	I thought it to be	<u> </u>				_	
	won't take long to A. That What he has done helps us A. isn't he B. d We all thought I took it for granted A. when How happy to be all A. that will be A. him very foolish of y A. It's I thing helpit	ie		C.	its	D.	she
11,	very foolish of y	ou to say	y so.				
	A. It's	B. Its		C.	That's	D.	This
	12. It's not his habit	for thi	ngs.			_	
	A. asks B. a	isk		С.	to ask	D.	asked
13	A. It's 12 \ It's not his habit A. asks B. a It has been a great honou A. they B. x	r	_cor	nınş	g to visit me.	_	X
1.4	A. they B. y I found to hear	ou . 1		C.	she	D.	he
14	I found to hear	what he	said.		1: 00 1.		.7/1/
	A. that difficulty			В.	it difficulty it difficult		
	C. that difficult			D.	it difficult		//2/ N
15	He is fifty, but doesn't_			_	1 10 1		(4)
					look for it		
10	C. look it				look him), >	<i>'</i> /, °
16	It waswho telepl	honed m	e ye	ster	day.		75.1
	A. him B. his			C.	himself	11	D. he
17	The sentence is w	rong.			., 10	7	D :42
10	A. its B. it	41 4 1			itself		D. it's
18					ceed in his ex		
10	A. It B. This		C.	ına	ι D.	The	ere
19	It seems John's	not com	ing	arte:		t c	
20	A. this B. that				D.		
20	was a handbag th	at John g	gave	Ma	ry at Christm	ıas.	

C. That D. Such A. It B. This 21 Was the famous writer had ever lived in? _the room_ A. that, it B. it, that C. it, where D. that, which _is said that he has been to many places in the United States. A. This B. He C. It D. That 23、What _you want me to do? A. it is B. that C. is this D. is it that 24. Is _____not important who will go? A. it B. that C. this $D. \times$ 25. Why is it _____everyone thinks he's a thief? A. because D. that B. as C. when _being Sunday, the library was closed. A. What C. That D. This B. It Is believed B. he, that 27、Is he is ill? C. it, if D. he, for is known to us Mary dances best. 29. "What's this?""____ affa C. It, she D. She, who ___a flag." B. That's A. This is C. It's D. Its 30. Jack is ill. Have you heard about A. him B. it C. this that There be 结构 31. Is_____a typewriter in the room? A. he B. there D. has 32. There's no one in the house, is_ D. they B. he there A. it 33、 must be something wrong. A. It B. He C. There D. They there anyone around? C. There D. Has B. Were used to be a church round the corner. A. Here B. There D. It is C. It 36. It is reported that _____ is going to be a storm. B. there A. it $C. \times$ D. the weather 37. There still a lot of work to be done before the house is ready for occupation. A. are B. were C. is D. have for the bus. 38. There is a girl A. to wait B. waiting C. waited D. wait 39、There_ _a pine tree at the top of the hill. A. stands D. has B. lies C. lives will be a good film on at the Rex next week.

C. That

This

A. There

B. It